

# Revision of the ANZECC/ARMCANZ Sediment Quality Guidelines

Stuart L. Simpson, Graeme E. Batley and Anthony A. Chariton

CSIRO Land and Water Science Report 08/07

May 2013

Prepared for the Department of Sustainability, Environment, Water, Population and Communities



Australia is founding its future on science and innovation. Its national science agency, CSIRO, is a powerhouse of ideas, technologies and skills.

CSIRO initiated the National Research Flagships to address Australia's major research challenges and opportunities. They apply large scale, long term, multidisciplinary science and aim for widespread adoption of solutions. The Flagship Collaboration Fund supports the best and brightest researchers to address these complex challenges through partnerships between CSIRO, universities, research agencies and industry.

The Water for a Healthy Country Flagship aims to provide Australia with solutions for water resource management, creating economic gains of \$3 billion per annum by 2030, while protecting or restoring our major water ecosystems. The work contained in this report is collaboration between CSIRO and [list collaborators]

For more information about Water for a Healthy Country Flagship or the National Research Flagship Initiative visit [www.csiro.au/org/HealthyCountry.html](http://www.csiro.au/org/HealthyCountry.html)

### Citation

Simpson SL, Batley GB and Chariton AA (2013). Revision of the ANZECC/ARMCANZ Sediment Quality Guidelines. CSIRO Land and Water Science Report 08/07. CSIRO Land and Water.

### Copyright and disclaimer

© 2013 CSIRO To the extent permitted by law, all rights are reserved and no part of this publication covered by copyright may be reproduced or copied in any form or by any means except with the written permission of CSIRO.

### Important disclaimer

CSIRO advises that the information contained in this publication comprises general statements based on scientific research. The reader is advised and needs to be aware that such information may be incomplete or unable to be used in any specific situation. No reliance or actions must therefore be made on that information without seeking prior expert professional, scientific and technical advice. To the extent permitted by law, CSIRO (including its employees and consultants) excludes all liability to any person for any consequences, including but not limited to all losses, damages, costs, expenses and any other compensation, arising directly or indirectly from using this publication (in part or in whole) and any information or material contained in it.



# Contents

Acknowledgments .....	iv
Executive summary .....	v

## Part I The Guidelines 1

1 Principles, Objectives and Management Framework for Sediment Quality Guidelines.....	3
1.1 Underlying Philosophy of Sediment Guidelines .....	4
1.2 The Sediment Quality Guideline Framework .....	4
2. Sediment Quality Guideline Values .....	9
2.1 Approach and Methodology used in Guideline Value Derivation.....	9
2.2 Recommended Guideline Trigger Values .....	10
2.3 Ammonia, Sulfide, Nutrients and Contaminants without SQGVs .....	14
3. Applying the Sediment Quality Guidelines Framework.....	17
3.1 Sediment Sampling and Analysis .....	17
3.2 Application of the WOE Assessment Framework.....	18
3.3 Lines-of-evidence (LOEs) and LOE Scoring .....	18
3.4 Weight-of-evidence Ranking .....	25
4. References .....	27

## Part II Rationale and Background Information 30

1. Sediments and Contaminants .....	32
1.1 Sources of Sediments and Sediment Contaminants .....	32
1.2 Sediment Properties .....	32
2. Sediment Sampling .....	35
2.1 Collection of Sediments.....	35
2.2 Sediment Manipulations and Storage .....	35
2.3 Sediment Pore Water .....	36
3. Derivation of Sediment Quality Guideline Values .....	38
3.1 Empirical Guidelines .....	38
3.2 Mechanistic Guidelines.....	40
3.3 Field-based SSD-derived Guidelines .....	44
3.4 Porewater Guidelines .....	44
3.5 Guidelines Based on Toxicity Testing .....	46
3.6 Approaches to SQGs in the EU and Norway.....	47
3.7 Reliability of the Australian and New Zealand Effects-based Guidelines.....	48
3.8 Guidelines for the Ocean Disposal of Dredged Sediments.....	49
4. Sediment Quality Assessment .....	51
4.1 Sediment Chemistry and Bioavailability Testing .....	51
4.2 Sediment Toxicity Testing.....	54

4.3	Bioaccumulation and Biomagnification .....	60
4.4	Ecological Assessment .....	64
5.	Uncertainties in WOE Assessments .....	72
6.	References .....	75
Appendix.	Revision and Derivation of Guideline and SQG-High Values for Contaminants.....	88
A1.	Introduction .....	88
A2.	Revision of Guideline Values for Tributyltin .....	89
A3.	Revision of Guideline Values for Total PAHs and the Equilibrium Sediment Benchmark (ESB) Approach for PAH Mixtures .....	90
A4.	ESBs for Dieldrin and Endrin .....	93
A5.	Derivation of a Guideline Value for Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons.....	94
A6.	AVS-SEM and ESBs Applications for Metal Mixtures .....	96
A7.	Derivation of Sediment Property-Specific Guideline Values for Metals.....	98
A7.4	Guideline Value Based on Chronic Toxicity of Copper to Benthic Organisms .....	107
A7.5	Validation of the Guideline Approach for Predicting Chronic Toxicity of Copper to Benthic Organisms .....	109
A7.6	Summary .....	110
A8.	References.....	112
Glossary	.....	117

## Figures

Figure 1. The tiered framework (decision tree) for the assessment of contaminated sediments for (a) metals and (b) organics .....	6
Figure 2. Generalised concentration-response relationship for contaminated sediments .....	9

## Tables

Table 1. Interpretations of likely combinations of LOE responses .....	8
Table 2. Recommended sediment quality guideline values .....	13
Table 3. Weight-of-evidence decision matrix (not all possible LOE or cases included) .....	25
Table 4. Examples of weight-of-evidence decisions.....	26
Table 5. Line-of-evidence decision matrix examples for chemical assessment .....	55
Table 6. Line-of-evidence decision matrix for toxicity test examples .....	60
Table 7. Line-of-evidence decision matrix for bioaccumulation/biomagnification examples .....	61
Table 8. Line-of-evidence decision matrix for ecological assessment examples .....	69
Table 9. Checklist for evaluating data uncertainties/limitations (adapted from Batley et al., 2002).....	70

# Acknowledgments

The authors are grateful to Agriculture Fisheries and Forestry Australia (AFFA) and later the Department of Environment, Water, Heritage and the Arts (DEWHA) for partial funding of this study.

The authors thanks the following scientists for review comments on early drafts of this report: Charles Lewis and Gerard Hogan (DEWHA), John Chapman (NSW Department of Environment Climate Change and Water), Stephen Fisher (Queensland EPA), Victor Talbot (WA Department of Environment and Conservation), Jenny Stauber (CSIRO), Dianne Wiesner (Australian Water Association), Chris Hickey and Michael Ahrens, (National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research), Mike Timperley and Shane Kelly (Auckland Regional Council), Nick Kim (Waikato Regional Council), Andrew Rumsby (Pattle Delamore Partners Ltd) and Bruce Williamson (Diffuse Resources, NZ).

[All funding bodies and collaborators must be acknowledged]



## Executive summary

Sediment quality guidelines (SQGs) were included for the first time in the revised Australian and New Zealand Guidelines for Fresh and Marine Water Quality released in 2000 (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000). At the time, these represented the latest in international thinking, however, in recognition that the science underpinning these guidelines required improvement, the guidelines were termed 'interim' with the intention being that they would be significantly revised in the future. The guidelines were presented as part of two volumes, the first providing a general overview and the second, the more detailed science.

This document, originally prepared for Agriculture Fisheries and Forestry Australia (AFFA), updates the original SQG documents. To facilitate the updating process, it has been prepared in two parts, consistent with the original documents where they appeared as Sections 3.5 and 8.4. The SQG revision builds on the original SQG document with the tiered, decision-tree approach adopted for the interim sediment quality guideline values (SQGVs) maintained, and guidance is provided for use of a weight-of-evidence (WOE) framework to improve the assessment of the potential impacts of contaminated sediments for more complex risk assessments.

The use of SQGVs, originally termed 'trigger values', was initiated in the original SQG document and this approach continues to be used in the revised SQG framework, but with different emphasis. The values are now to be termed sediment quality guideline values (SQGVs). There are numerous uncertainties associated with the SQGVs, and for some assessments too much weight was being given to the chemistry SQGV comparison when following the decision-tree framework of the original SQG document. In cases where there is significant uncertainty in the chemistry SQGV-based initial assessment, the WOE framework expands to consider a greater number of lines of evidence (LOEs). In addition to chemical measures of potential bioavailability (e.g. acid-volatile sulfides, AVS) and the ecotoxicology LOE that were part of the original framework, the revised framework explicitly allows for the considering of bioaccumulation and ecological health as two additional LOEs.

The recommended application of revised SQGs continues to involve a tiered, decision-tree approach, in keeping with the risk-based approach introduced in the water quality guidelines. Following this framework, the total concentrations of contaminants are compared to the SQGVs and if the contaminant concentrations exceed one or a number of the SQGVs, further investigations should be initiated to determine whether there is indeed an environmental risk associated with the exceedance. The SQGVs are not to be used on a pass/fail basis.

The first-level screening compares the SQGV with the measured value for the total contaminant concentration in the sediment. If the SQGV is exceeded, then the next level of screening considers the fraction of the contaminant that is likely to be bioavailable or can be transformed and mobilised in a bioavailable form (based on chemical measurements). The contaminants whose concentrations exceed SQGVs following consideration of contaminant bioavailability are termed contaminants of potential concern (COPCs).

The decision-tree now proceeds to the evaluation of additional lines of evidence (LOEs) to determine whether the COPCs are likely to affect ecosystem health. Chemistry (including bioavailability measures), ecotoxicology, bioaccumulation and benthic ecology are general LOEs, but other LOEs may be added on a case-specific basis. Each LOE can comprise a range of measures, e.g. a number of different toxicity test methods, field- and laboratory-based measures of potential bioaccumulation, etc. These LOEs more accurately identify which of the COPCs are contaminants of concern (COCs). A WOE approach is adopted to evaluate the combination of the individual LOEs. The recommended approach applies numerical scores to each LOE, and brings these together in an overall assessment table that allows ranking of the sediments according to overall risk. High scores for all lines of evidence are indicative of the highest risk of detrimental ecological effects.

Elevated contaminant concentrations (COPCs and COCs), i.e. chemistry, remain the underlying 'driver' for the WOE assessment framework for several reasons:

- (i) in most sediment quality assessments it is the concentrations of contaminants that is the key concern (i.e. suspected to be the cause of the effects);
- (ii) preventing the release of contaminants from, or the dispersion of contaminated sediments, into areas that are pristine or less contaminated is a common value of risk assessments; and
- (iii) management options for removal (e.g. dredging), containment (e.g. capping) and other forms of remediation of contaminated sediments will generally be most easily guided by concentrations of COCs.

The scientific background to the proposed revisions is documented in Part 2. This includes some of the information from the original Guidelines, supplemented by advances since 2000.

In addition to the revised SQG framework, suggestions are made for the revision of the recommended guideline SQGVs and upper guidelines (SQG-High values) for a range of metals, metalloids, organometals and organic sediment contaminants. For metals, the SQGVs and SQG-High values are largely unchanged, and remain based on the effects range low (ERL) and effects range median (ERM) values. For organics, threshold effects level (TEL) and probable effects level (PEL) values are now used. For some chemical contaminants for which SQGVs currently exist, published reviews of effects data indicate that SQGVs could be improved (e.g. for PAHs and dieldrin; see Appendix A3 and A4 ). For other chemical contaminants, there appears to be benefits in re-deriving SQGVs that better consider the influence of sediment type (e.g. for most metals). There are also some common chemical contaminants for which no SQGVs have previously existed, but a SQGV could now be derived (e.g. for total petroleum hydrocarbons, TPHs; see Appendix A5).

# Part I    The Guidelines



# 1 Principles, Objectives and Management Framework for Sediment Quality Guidelines

The approach to management of water quality in Australia and New Zealand is based on the protection of environmental values through a consideration of acceptable concentrations of contaminants in receiving waters as well as in effluents and non-point sources. The NWQMS Water Quality Guidelines for Fresh and Marine Waters (ANZECC, 1992) provided a framework for the regulatory control of receiving water quality. The guidelines recognise that the total load and fate of contaminants, particularly to enclosed systems, should also be considered. In 2000, a major revision of these guidelines (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000a) was released that for the first time included sediment quality guidelines (SQGs). The important role of sediments, as both a source and a sink of dissolved contaminants, has been recognised for some time. In addition to their influence on surface water quality, sediments represent a source of bioavailable contaminants to benthic biota, and hence potentially to the aquatic food chain. Defining the extent of the threat to ecosystem health posed by sediment-associated contaminants will assist in prioritising management options.

The sediment quality guideline chapters reviewed the state of knowledge on the environmental impacts of contaminants in sediments, and the approaches used to formulate interim SQGs. On the basis of these, a procedure for the development of appropriate SQGs for Australia and New Zealand was outlined. The sediment guidelines were applicable to slightly to moderately disturbed and highly disturbed aquatic ecosystems (see Section 3.1.4 of the Guidelines, ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000a)). Consideration of sediment quality followed the hierarchical decision tree approach being adopted in the Guidelines, with a focus on issue identification and the protection necessary to manage these issues.

For aquatic ecosystems considered to be of high conservation/ecological value, a precautionary approach was recommended. In these ecosystems, anthropogenic chemicals should be undetectable, and naturally occurring toxicants (e.g. metals) should not exceed background sediment concentrations (see Section 3.1.4.2 of the Guidelines, ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000a)). Relaxation of this approach should only be considered when there were considerable biological assessment data showing that such a change in sediment quality would not impact on the biological diversity of the ecosystem.

Since 2000, there have been considerable advances worldwide in the science underpinning sediment quality assessment. These have included the use of weight-of-evidence (WOE) approaches, the development of new toxicity tests, the recognition of limitations in some SQGs and the development of new guidelines, as well as additional information on contaminant bioavailability and uptake pathways (Batley et al., 2005; Simpson et al., 2005; Simpson and Batley, 2007).

Sediment quality assessments take many forms and are used for planning, licencing and approval, and monitoring, assessment and environmental reporting. For many of these, the assessment of potential chemical hazards is undertaken early to assist in formalising the scope of later investigations, e.g. where sediments are to be disturbed by proposed new infrastructure (e.g. a new wharf, maintenance dredging) and contaminant release or disposal options may need to be considered. In some cases, the consideration of the ecology or potential ecotoxicology at the field site may not be necessary (e.g. where operations are

confined). Consequently, the decision to use a WOE approach will be dependent on the scale and needs of the specific assessment. A tiered, decision-tree approach, in keeping with the risk-based approach introduced in the water quality guidelines, remains the recommendation of this guideline revision. While guideline values (SQGVs) based on concentrations of a limited number of measured contaminants remain the first tier of the decision tree, where it is suspected that environmentally significant concentrations of contaminants exist with inadequate or no SQGVs, then other lines of evidence (LOEs) should immediately be considered.

This document incorporates these findings in a revision of the interim SQGs for Australia and New Zealand, with Part 1 of the document describing the underlying concepts and philosophy and Part 2 providing greater discussion and literature relating to the approaches taken.

## 1.1 Underlying Philosophy of Sediment Guidelines

It is important to understand why sediment guidelines have been developed and how and where they might be applied. The establishment of guidelines serves three principal purposes:

- (i) to identify sediments where contaminant concentrations are likely to result in adverse impacts on sediment ecological health;
- (ii) to make decisions about the potential remobilisation of contaminants into the water column and/or into aquatic food chains; and
- (iii) to identify and enable protection of uncontaminated sediments.

Many urban and harbour sediments will fall into the first category, usually being contaminated by heavy metals and hydrophobic organics, resulting from both diffuse and point-source inputs. They are not easily remediated, and *ex situ* treatment or dredging and disposal are currently the most cost-effective options. Knowledge of elevated concentrations of sediment contaminants at a site, and the potential for their biological uptake, may lead to controls on the collection of benthic organisms for human consumption. For the most part, because of the enormous costs involved, there is unlikely to be large scale sediment remediation, unless driven by human health risk assessments. Natural remediation of contaminated sediments may occur via the deposition, above the contaminated zone, of freshly deposited sediments able to support viable biological populations. This will occur through water column inputs and be managed through controls on inputs via water quality guidelines.

Management conflicts can arise when such natural sediment accumulation restricts navigation. It is possible to adopt measures to protect more pristine areas from further contamination, and this is where the application of SQGs will be of greatest value. This will involve the management of inputs.

## 1.2 The Sediment Quality Guideline Framework

The application of sediment guidelines involves a tiered, decision-tree approach (Figure 1), in keeping with the risk-based approach introduced in the water quality guidelines. Following this framework, the total concentrations of contaminants are compared to SQG values. If the contaminant concentrations exceed the SQGVs, further investigations should be initiated to determine whether there is indeed an environmental risk associated with the exceedance.

It is important to reiterate that the SQGVs should not be used on a pass/fail basis, the major premise of the risk-based approach introduced in ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000a). The first-level

screening compares the SQGV with the measured value for the total contaminant concentration in the sediment. These measurements are made on the <2 mm sediment fraction to exclude low surface area materials with low capacity for binding contaminants (e.g. coarse sand and large debris).

For organic contaminants, and for metals if the SQGV is still exceeded following the total metals consideration, the next step involves comparison with background concentrations in reference sediments of comparable grain size from appropriate sites. Exceedance of the SQGV is acceptable if it is below the background concentration. Note that for most anthropogenic organic contaminants, the background concentrations should be zero, but for metals it is possible for background concentrations to significantly exceed trigger values.

If the SQGV is exceeded, and above the background concentration, the next step in the case of metal contaminants is to look at a dilute acid extractable metal concentration (AEM, by 30 min 1 M HCl extraction) which provides a useful measure of the potentially bioavailable metals. Non-available forms of metals in sediments might include mineralised metals that require strong acid dissolution, as achieved by total particulate metal (TPM) measurements (also referred to as total recoverable metals). For many assessments, AEM measurements may be a useful starting point in the decision tree, rather than TPM determinations. However, for some metal phases that are sparingly soluble in 1 M HCl (e.g. sulfide phases of Ag, Cu, Hg) and metals associated with organic polymers that may degrade over time (e.g. antifouling paints, tyre rubber), the measurement of TPM allows the potential future transformation of these metals into more bioavailable forms to be adequately considered (see Part 2). In some jurisdictions, TPM measurements are deemed necessary for comparison with historical data trends.

The contaminants whose concentrations exceed SQGVs following consideration of contaminant bioavailability are termed contaminants of potential concern (COPCs).

If the SQGV is still exceeded, the third step involves the more explicit consideration of the bioavailable contaminant fraction (see Part 2, Section 4.1). For metals that form insoluble sulfides, amorphous iron sulfide (FeS) measured as so-called acid-volatile sulfides (AVS), is an important metal-binding phase that reduces metal bioavailability. Measurements of metal concentrations in the pore waters and elutriates also provides valuable information on metal bioavailability. Many organic contaminants are hydrophobic and bind strongly to the organic carbon in sediments. To account for the preferential partitioning of these contaminants to organic matter, organic contaminants and their SQGVs are normalised to the total organic carbon (TOC) concentration of the sediment (i.e. normalised to 1% TOC). This normalisation should only be applied for TOC concentrations between 0.2 and 10%. Advances in the approaches for metals and organics are discussed in Part 2.

In this revised SQG framework, the decision-tree now proceeds to the evaluation of additional LOEs to determine whether the contaminants are likely to affect ecosystem health. In the original Guidelines, the assessment only considered toxicity as the final step. It is important to stress that this approach is still appropriate, and if toxicity testing confirms that adverse effects may be occurring due to contaminants, then that is sufficient and management action can be initiated.

Where the results are ambivalent, in particular where guidelines are exceeded yet no toxic effects are apparent, then the extent of the potential risk needs to be better established through the use of additional lines of evidence in a weight-of-evidence (WOE) approach. Such ambivalence might occur when (i) there are moderate contaminant concentrations and small, but statistically significant effects in chronic tests that could also be due to non-contaminant stressors (e.g. ammonia), or (ii) moderately reduced survival is observed in an acute test, but

sub-lethal or chronic tests indicate no effects. A WOE assessment is recommended when contaminants for which no SQGV exists may be present at high concentrations.

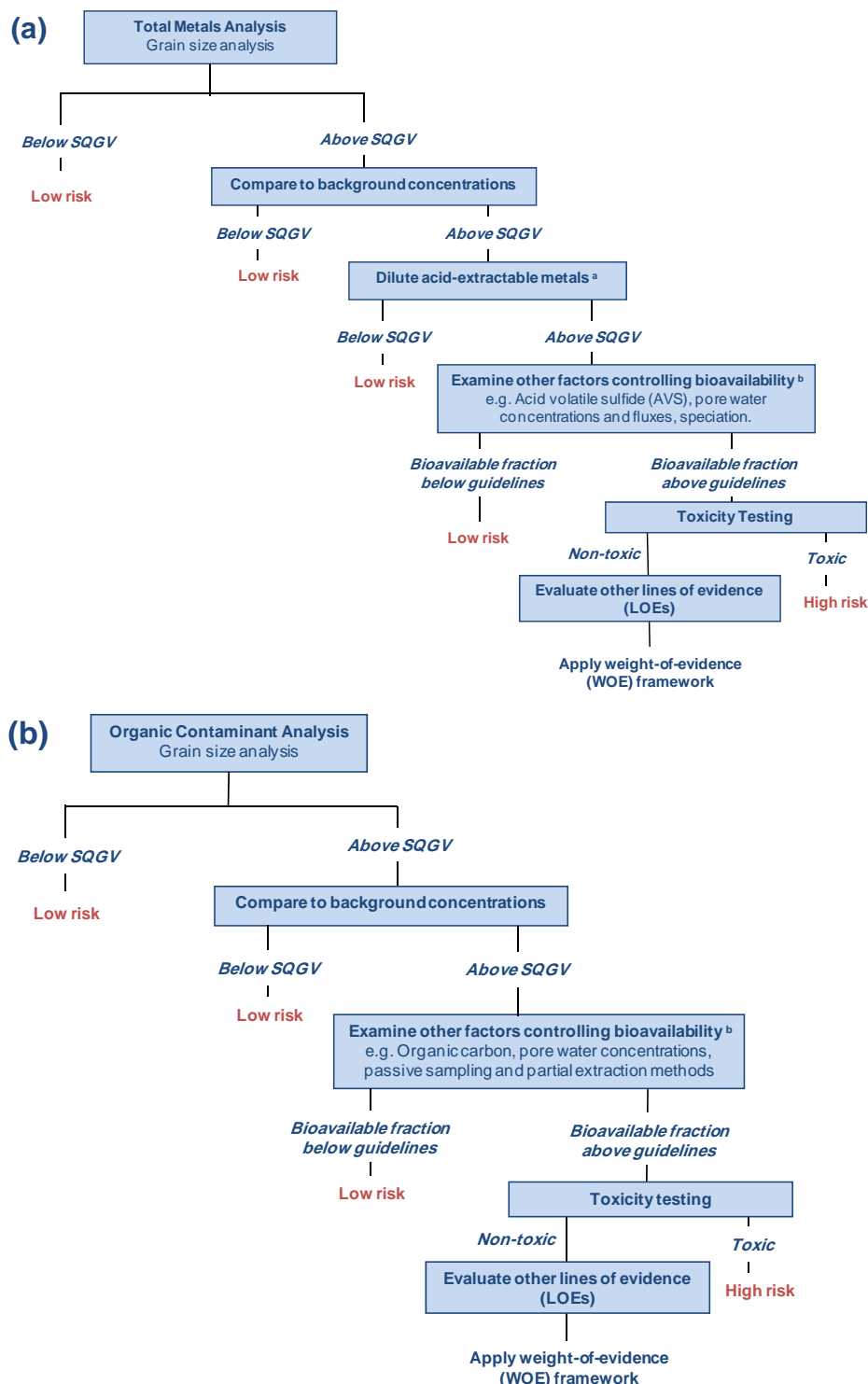


Figure 1. The tiered framework (decision tree) for the assessment of contaminated sediments for (a) metals and (b) organics. SQGV = Sediment quality guideline value. Notes: <sup>a</sup> This step may not be applicable to metalloids (As, Se) and mercury (Hg). <sup>b</sup> See specific methods on how bioavailability test results are used. Other LOE include toxicity, bioaccumulation, ecology, and biomarkers.



The decision trees in Figure 1 imply a purely hierarchical approach to sediment quality assessment, leading to a WOE assessment, however, in other instances, it may be in the interests of those undertaking the sediment study to go directly to a full WOE study, although it is clearly more costly than a consideration only of chemistry, with or without ecotoxicological confirmation. Environmental managers will need to decide whether the costs justify the advantages of a more detailed assessment. For example, defining the area of environmental concern for a dredging activity might involve millions of dollars in additional remediation if the area to be remediated is not clearly defined. The situations that might dictate the undertaking of a full WOE assessment might include:

- (i) confounding results are obtained from chemical assessment and toxicity testing (exceeded SQGVs not supported by toxicity tests; or toxicity is seen when no SQGVs exceeded),
- (ii) the presence of an unknown mixture of contaminants at a site
- (iii) a requirement from a regulatory agency for a full ecological risk assessment of impacts on sediments due either to historical, existing or proposed activities that impact on sediment ecosystem health
- (iv) the observation of an apparently degraded ecological environment that requires more detailed evaluation, or
- (v) where the site being studied is sufficiently large and the remediation options so expensive that delineation of those sediments posing the greatest risks to ecosystem health is desirable to better target these options.

The WOE approach supplements the chemistry and ecotoxicology LOEs, with measures of bioaccumulation and benthic ecology that are now recognised as important indicators of sediment quality (Batley et al., 2002, 2005; Simpson et al., 2005; Wenning et al., 2005). Assessments of this type require a different framework that considers all of the LOEs together (Chapman et al., 2002; Batley et al., 2002; Chapman and Anderson, 2005; Simpson et al., 2005).

A simplified approach to such an assessment is illustrated in Table 1, with examples showing how different sets of LOEs might be interpreted. The recommended approach applies numerical scores to each LOE, and brings these together in an overall assessment table that allows some ranking of the sediments according to overall risk. High scores for all LOEs are indicative of the highest risk. The application of the WOE assessment framework is discussed in detail in Section 3.

**Table 1. Interpretations of likely combinations of LOE responses**

CHEMISTRY	LINE OF EVIDENCE			INTERPRETATION
	TOXICITY	BIOACCUMULATION	ECOLOGY	
+	-	-	-	Contaminants present at concentrations exceeding guideline values, but not bioavailable
-	+	-	-	Toxic effects due to unmeasured contaminants or an unidentified stressor
+	-	+	-	Contaminants exceeding guideline values and bioaccumulating, but not toxic
+	-	-	+	Toxicity not seen using the test organisms, but effects are still seen on benthic ecology
-	-	-	+	Unmeasured contaminants or other factors contributing to ecological impacts
+	+	-	-	Some resistance to impacts on ecology, or unmeasured contaminants toxic to some species
-	+	-	+	Unmeasured contaminants or stressors are toxic and affecting ecosystem health
+	+	+	-	Measured contaminants are toxic and accumulating, but no significant ecological effects are observed
+	+	+	+	Measured contaminants exceed guideline values, are toxic and affecting ecosystem health

## 2. Sediment Quality Guideline Trigger Values

### 2.1 Approach and Methodology used in Guideline Value Derivation

Ideally, sediment quality guideline values (SQGVs) should unequivocally distinguish between sediments that cause biological effects and those that do not. In reality however, the occurrence of biological effects does not show such a clearly delineated relationship (Batley et al., 2005). In a generalised concentration-response model (Figure 2), there are three distinct zones, comprising concentrations (i) below the threshold for effects (TE), (ii) above the probable effects limit (PE), and (iii) in a transition zone between the two (Batley et al., 2005). Currently, there is greater confidence about our ability to define the PE and TE zones, however, the transition zone is poorly defined and may span more than an order of magnitude of metal concentrations. This level of uncertainty needs to be reduced since the transition zone also encompasses the concentration range of many of the contaminated sediments that are of concern to regulators.

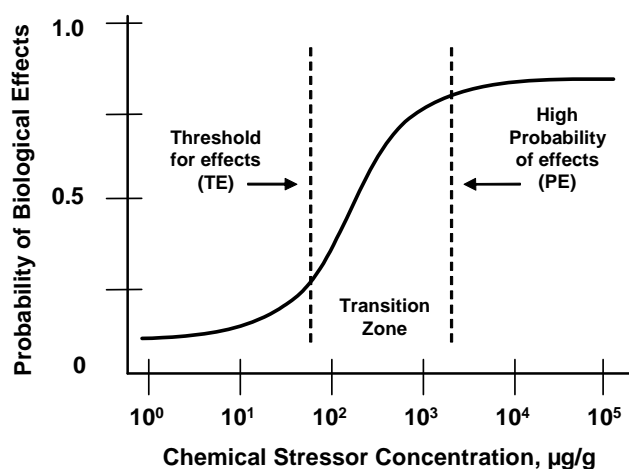


Figure 2. Generalised concentration-response relationship for contaminated sediments

Effects data from toxicity tests, bioaccumulation and ecological assessments, are defined relative to suitable control responses (reference sites), and consequently the output is indicative of either 'effects' or 'no effects'. Factors that cause the overlap between effects and no-effects data are numerous, and include unaccounted for contributions from uncharacterised chemicals or stressors, differences in bioavailability, differing responses among organisms, and errors in measurement of chemical and biological response parameters. It is the intent of all SQGVs to minimise the size of the transition zone, however no SQGVs will ever be fully successful in doing this.

The bioavailability of contaminants is greatly affected by sediment properties, and toxic effects due to contaminants are not exhibited in sediments in which the contaminants are not bioavailable, regardless of the total contaminant concentrations. The size of the transition zone shown in Figure 2 is largely a consequence of the uncertainty associated with the effects of sediment properties on contaminant bioavailability.

Because the SQGV derivations were based on total rather than the bioavailable contaminant concentrations, the SQGVs cannot be used alone to predict the onset, or magnitude, of toxic effects. Consequently, use of the SQGVs as strict criteria will likely result in many sediments being classified as toxic when there are no effects evident (a false positive). Conversely, sediments may contain many other chemical contaminants for which SQGVs have not been developed. Consequently, assessing the risk posed by sediments based only on the published SQGVs may result in sediments being classifying as non-toxic when effects may be occurring due to chemical contaminants that have not been considered (a false negative).

The many approaches adopted internationally for the derivation of sediment quality guidelines are more fully described in Part 2. By far the most common approach to guideline derivation has been the use of an effects database for contaminated and uncontaminated sites, based on field data, laboratory toxicity testing and predictions based on equilibrium partitioning of contaminants between sediment and pore water. Unlike the water quality guidelines, which are based on effects data for individual contaminants, the majority of the effects data used to derive SQGs suffer from co-occurrence of contaminants. This prevents the observed effects being confidently assigned to any one contaminant, and is the source of the greatest uncertainty in the guidelines.

With the recent development of appropriate sediment toxicity tests using species that are applicable in Australia and New Zealand, it is increasingly possible to use local species data in the derivation or re-evaluation of SQGVs. However, although such data are slowly being accumulated, without some financial impetus there is little likelihood that sufficient new data will be forthcoming in the immediate future to allow SQGVs to be adjusted for effects on local species or for new SQGVs to be derived where previously none existed. On that basis, and as has been done in many other countries, the option selected for SQGVs is to use the best available effects data from overseas studies and refine these on the basis of our knowledge of existing baseline concentrations, as well as using local effects data as they become available.

The ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000a) approach recommended two sediment quality guidelines following the empirical approach to guideline derivation (Batley et al., 2005). The lower trigger value, SQGV (equivalent to the effects range low value used by Long and Morgan (1990), represented the threshold for effects and the upper guideline (equivalent to the effect range median) represented the high probability of effects referred to above (Figure 2).

## 2.2 Recommended Guideline Trigger Values

There is now increased recognition and understanding of the uncertainty associated with the process of deriving SQGVs (Batley et al., 2005; Bay et al., 2012; Di Toro, 2013). As a consequence, revisions are suggested for some of the guideline values from the interim values adopted in 2000 (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000a). However, in general, more recent derivations, using consensus guidelines that are based on a range of differently derived effects guidelines, or guidelines derived from the application of species sensitivity distributions to ecological data, showed SQGVs that were not significantly different from those adopted in Australia and New Zealand (MacDonald et al., 2000; Leung et al., 2005; Lui et al., 2013). In general, there was a

good linear (1:1) correlation between freshwater and marine effects-based guidelines (Smith et al., 1996), indicating that, within the uncertainties of the SQGVs, the values are applicable to both ecosystem types. A comparison of national and regional sediment quality guidelines for classifying sediment toxicity in California found relatively small changes in classification accuracy obtained with regional calibration of SQGs (Bay et al., 2012). In future revisions of SQGVs, it should be possible to obtain ecosystem-specific guidelines, however, there are insufficient data to do this currently, although attempted in the Canadian guidelines (CCME, 2002).

The potential to use field-based species sensitivity distributions (f-SSD) to derive sediment quality guidelines for chemical mixtures based on benthic community data and/or ecotoxicology is improving and is discussed in Part 2. However, like the existing empirical and mechanistic approaches, the new approaches also require assumptions that lead to similar levels of uncertainty, and do not currently deal with differences in contaminant bioavailability between sediment types.

The recommended SQGVs and upper guidelines (SQG-High values) for a range of metals, metalloids, organometals and organic sediment contaminants are listed in Table 2. For metals, the SQGVs are largely unchanged, but the discussion of the use of the SQGVs and bioavailability modifying factors has been improved (see Part 2).

For organics, there is greater variability between the various guideline derivations. Here, the effects range low (ERL) values of Long et al. (1995) now appear to be less reliable than the threshold effects level (TEL) values of MacDonald et al. (2000) that have been adopted in Canada (CCME, 2002). The TEL values have therefore been adopted for many of the organics in this revision.

Considerable research has been undertaken into the use of an equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmark (ESB) approach for non-ionic organics (which includes polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon (PAH) mixtures and a range of other narcotic organic chemicals). The SQGV and SQG-High values for total PAHs have been revised based on improved effects data and guideline derivation approaches, however an ESB approach is recommended for assessments where non-ionic organics represent a dominant class of contaminants or where consideration of individual PAHs is necessary (see Appendix A2). The risks posed by individual PAHs (such as pyrene) should be evaluated using the more advanced ESB approach that is described in Part 2 (US EPA, 2012), and consequently the SQGVs for individual PAHs have been removed from Table 2.

The upper guidelines (SQG-High) are mostly based on the effects-range median (ERM) values (for metals) (Long et al., 1995) and probable effect levels (PELs) of MacDonald et al. (2000) (CCME, 2002) for organics. More advanced approaches are described for considering mixtures of non-ionic organics and the bioavailability of metals. These upper values are in the high probability of effects region of the concentration-response plot in Figure 2.

The adopted effects guidelines were based on the ranking of toxicity based on US effects databases. There was an option to supplement these data with additional data reported since 2000 (and data from Australia and New Zealand). Despite the apparent attraction of this approach, it was seen as counter-productive since many of the data in the original database and some of the new data were compromised by the issues of co-occurrence. A better approach would be to pursue toxicity data for individual contaminants in sediments, since only then can robust guidelines be derived, as is the case for the water quality guidelines.

A more detailed discussion of the origins of the adopted guideline values is presented in Part 2. For some of the contaminants, revised values have been provided based on improved effects data and guideline derivation approaches (Appendix A).

The SQGVs are presented on a dry weight basis. This does not imply that samples should be dried before analysis resulting in potential losses of some analytes, but that results should be corrected for moisture content. For all of the organic contaminants listed and for tributyltin (TBT), values are normalised to 1% organic carbon, rather than expressing as mg/kg organic carbon as is sometimes done. If the sediment organic carbon content is markedly higher than 1%, the SQGV should be reduced accordingly, since additional carbon binding sites reduce contaminant bioavailability. It is recommended that the use of normalisation should, however, be limited to organic carbon concentrations between 0.2 and 10% (Batley et al., 2002). At lower organic carbon concentrations, other physical and chemical factors influence the partitioning process for hydrophobic organics, while at higher values the organic carbon is likely to be dominated by oils or tars.

**Table 2. Recommended sediment quality guideline values**

CONTAMINANT	GUIDELINE VALUE	SQG-HIGH
METALS (mg/kg dry weight) <sup>a</sup>		
Antimony	2.0	25
Cadmium	1.5	10
Chromium	80	370
Copper	65	270
Lead	50	220
Mercury	0.15	1.0
Nickel	21	52
Silver	1.0	4.0
Zinc	200	410
METALLOIDS (mg/kg dry weight) <sup>a</sup>		
Arsenic	20	70
ORGANOMETALLICS		
Tributyltin (µg Sn/kg dry weight, 1% TOC) <sup>c, d</sup>	9.0	70
ORGANICS (µg/kg dry weight, 1% TOC) <sup>b, c</sup>		
Total PAHs <sup>e</sup>	10,000	50,000
Total DDT	1.2	5.0
p,p'-DDE	1.4	7.0
o,p'- + p,p'-DDD	3.5	9.0
Chlordane	4.5	9.0
Dieldrin <sup>f</sup>	2.8	7.0
Endrin <sup>f</sup>	2.7	60
Lindane	0.9	1.4
Total PCBs	34	280
Total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPHs) (mg/kg dry weight) <sup>g</sup>	280	550

<sup>a</sup> Primarily adapted from the ERL/ERM values of Long et al. (1995).

<sup>b</sup> Primarily adapted from TEL and PEL values of MacDonald et al. (2000) and CCME (2002)

<sup>c</sup> Normalised to 1% organic carbon within the limits of 0.2 to 10%. Thus if a sediment has (i) 2% OC, the '1% normalised' concentration would be the measured concentration divided by 2, (ii) 0.5% OC, then the 1% normalised value is the measured value divided by 0.5, (iii) 0.15% OC, then the 1% normalised value is the measured value divided by the lower limit of 0.2.

<sup>d</sup> Basis of revision is described in Appendix A2.

<sup>e</sup> The SQGV and SQG-High values for total PAHs (sum of PAHs) are described in Appendix A3 and include the 18 parent PAHs: naphthalene, acenaphthylene, acenaphthene, fluorene, anthracene, phenanthrene, fluoranthene, pyrene, benzo[a]anthracene, chrysene, benzo(a)pyrene, perylene, benzo(b)fluoranthene, benzo(k)fluoranthene, benzo(e)pyrene, benzo(ghi)perylene, dibenz(a,h)anthracene, and indeno(1,2,3-cd)pyrene. Where non-ionic organic contaminants like PAHs are the dominant chemicals of potential concern (COPCs), the use of ESB approach is desirable, and is applied as outlined in Appendix A3, that includes a further 16 alkylated PAHs (generally listed as C1-/C2-/C3-/C4-alkylated).

<sup>f</sup> Where dieldrin or endrin are the major COPCs, it is recommended that ESB approaches are applied as described in the Appendix A4.

<sup>g</sup> Origin described in the Appendix A5.

## 2.3 Ammonia, Sulfide, Nutrients and Contaminants without SQGVs

Ammonia, sulfide and nutrients such as phosphate and nitrate are often present naturally at detectable concentrations in sediment pore waters and may become chemical stressors at high concentrations. For ammonia a new SQGV is proposed, but no specific SQGVs apply for sulfide, nitrate or phosphate. For many other chemical contaminants, no SQGVs can be specified for the contaminant due to the lack of research in ecotoxicological effects. However, it is important to identify when the chemicals represent a threat to ecosystem health.

### 2.3.1 AMMONIA

Ammonia occurs naturally in sediments and pore waters due to the microbial degradation of nitrogenous organic material such as amino acids. Ammonia is highly soluble and total ammonia, generally termed  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N}$ , includes both un-ionised  $\text{NH}_3$  and ionised  $\text{NH}_4^+$ . The extent of ionisation is dependent on the water pH, temperature, and salinity, and 50%  $\text{NH}_3$ /50%  $\text{NH}_4^+$  occurs at pH 9.4 (25°C, 30 ‰). Unionised  $\text{NH}_3$  is the toxic form of ammonia and for seawater with pH 8 and 20°C, comprises less than 3.8% of the total ammonia (Table 8.3.4, ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000a).

The concentration of ammonia will be highest in organic- and nitrogen-rich systems, and in some instances this enrichment occurs where normal nitrogen cycling reactions are disrupted by anthropogenic activities. While most benthic organisms are adapted to deal with elevated porewater ammonia concentrations, and are either insensitive to ammonia or are able to maintain a low exposure to ammonia by regular irrigation of their burrows with overlying water, a guideline value of 4 mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  is introduced in these guidelines to better consider potentially degraded systems (Batley and Simpson, 2009). This conservative value is the upper 80<sup>th</sup> percentile of background data for Sydney Harbour sediments. A value of 4.5 mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  was calculated from the 95% species protection trigger value based on 9 acute benthic LC50 values divided by 5 to convert to a NOEC. In whole-sediment toxicity tests, the flux of ammonia from the pore waters can result in significant effects, that in a natural system would be diluted by mixing currents, and requires additional consideration (see Part 2, Section 4.2.3).

### 2.3.2 SULFIDE

Sulfide is produced in sediments by the biologically-mediated anaerobic decomposition of organic matter and is a major constituent of aquatic sediments. As a consequence, sulfide concentrations are typically higher in more organic carbon-rich sediments and those where the penetration of oxygen is low (e.g. fine silty sediments or low energy environments).

The biological effects of sulfide in sediments are poorly understood. Benthic invertebrates living in close association with sediments are commonly exposed to sulfide in the pore waters. In general, plants are less susceptible to effects from sulfide, although porewater sulfide concentrations greater than 1 mg/L have been shown to be deleterious to seagrasses (Calleja et al., 2007).

The presence of hydrogen sulfide can affect animal behaviour which in turn can alter the toxicity of both sulfide and also other sediment contaminants (Wang and Chapman, 1999). Hydrogen sulfide can be extremely toxic, and can be a naturally occurring chemical stressor. Sediments with high contaminant concentrations may be avoided by larger bioturbating



organisms and this will reduce the frequency that oxygen mixes with deeper sediments. Consequently, sediments with high sulfide concentrations can be an indication of poor sediment quality, since normally the bioturbation activities of benthic organisms prevent dissolved sulfide reaching mg/L concentrations. Organisms that do not avoid sulfide may create oxidised niches (e.g. as exist around all burrows), and the oxidative release of metals associated with sulfides may result in the forms of metals becoming more bioavailable near the organism. This leads to the need to consider exposure variability in relation to sulfides. The resuspension of sediments with very high sulfide concentrations has the potential to cause localised deoxygenation of waters and these risks should be considered in relation to the water quality guidelines (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000a).

No guideline value is provided for sulfide as it is considered rare that porewater sulfide concentrations will be elevated due to anthropogenic contamination.

### **2.3.3 EVALUATING AMMONIA, SULFIDE AND NUTRIENT IMPACTS**

Generally ammonia and sulfide should not be considered as contaminants of potential concern (COPCs), however, adequate consideration should be given to the potential contributions of both sulfide and ammonia in sediment quality assessments. Ammonia and sulfide in the pore water that is released from the sediments is rapidly diluted by overlying waters. Organisms that reside at the sediment surface will be exposed to ammonia and sulfide concentrations that are a fraction of the concentrations of those in the pore waters.

Toxicity identification and evaluation (TIE) tests may be used to confirm whether ammonia or sulfide are major toxicants in pore water and whole-sediment toxicity tests (see Part 2 Section 4.3.5).

In sediments where high concentrations of organic matter are a result of anthropogenic contamination, the high dissolved ammonia and sulfide concentrations produced by these sediments may be considered as COPCs. Such concentrations can be toxic and can have effects on benthic ecology.

The ecological effects of high concentration of nutrients, such as nitrate and phosphate, are more an important consideration for water quality. High nutrient fluxes from sediments may stimulate algal or macrophyte blooms. The effects of nutrients will be highly dependent on the ecosystem being assessed. No general sediment quality guidelines for nutrients are proposed.

Note that elevated nutrient concentrations can potentially influence the outcome of toxicity tests that use algae as a test organism.

### **2.3.4 CONTAMINANTS WITHOUT GUIDELINE VALUES**

Thousands of chemicals that enter the environment have no ecotoxicological effects data that can be used to develop SQGVs. The WOE framework is designed to allow decisions to be reached when a single LOE is insufficient for making decisions. Consequently, if SQGVs do not exist for the chemicals, the other LOEs are used to decide whether they represent a likely threat to ecosystem health.

In some situations, site-specific guidelines may be able to be developed for some contaminants. The approach suggested is to derive a value on the basis of median natural background (reference) concentrations multiplied by an appropriate factor. As suggested in the current Guidelines (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000a), a factor of two is recommended, although

in some highly disturbed ecosystems a slightly larger factor may be more appropriate, but no larger than three, however, this approach has low reliability. If available, it may be possible to apply the water quality guideline values to the chemical concentrations in the pore waters.

The information available on effects thresholds for contaminants continues to grow, and organisations such as NOAA have provided useful compilations, e.g. the Screening Quick Reference Tables (SQuiRT) for inorganic and organic contaminants in various media (Buchman, 2008).

## 3. Applying the Sediment Quality Guidelines Framework

### 3.1 Sediment Sampling and Analysis

The use of appropriate sampling design and sampling techniques is a prerequisite for collection of sediments for chemical analysis, toxicity testing and ecological assessments. Detailed advice is provided in the Australian Guidelines for Water Quality Monitoring and Reporting (ANZECC/ARMCANZ 2000b), as well as in the relevant USEPA document (USEPA, 2001) and CSIRO's Handbook for Sediment Quality Assessment (Simpson et al., 2005), the latter including a discussion of artefacts associated with poor practices). It is important to reinforce the recommended holistic approach of the Monitoring and Reporting Guidelines that begins with determining monitoring objectives, considers sampling design, field sampling, laboratory analyses, data analysis and reporting, with appropriate considerations of quality assurance and quality control built into all stages.

A first concern is that sampling is taken from a depth that is appropriate in terms of effects of contaminants on benthic organisms. Most organisms are found in the upper 10 cm of sediments, while epibenthic organisms might only be exposed to surficial sediment (0-1 cm). Determining contaminants in the top 10 cm or in both the 0-2 and 2-10 cm depth sediments should allow assessment of the major contaminant exposure pathways. The surface layer will represent the most recently deposited sediments, although bioturbation may mix this with deeper sediments. The impact of deeper sediments might be a concern if they are to be disturbed and redeposited, e.g. by dredging.

A second concern is for changes that might occur to the sediment chemistry during field processing, handling and storage of sediments. Particularly for metal analyses, it is important to note that the redox properties of sediments will vary with depth, with oxic sediments confined at best to the upper 2 cm and frequently much less. If anoxic sediments are exposed to air, oxidation of iron (II) will produce hydrogen ions that will release metals into pore waters (with potential toxic effects) in excess of what might be present under ambient conditions. More volatile organic contaminants will be lost through increased handling and storage of sediments.

The concentration of contaminants is typically much greater in the finer sediment fractions. Consequently, the <2 mm sediment fraction that may contain coarse sand and large debris is excluded from the chemical analyses. The <63 µm sediment fraction is considered a suitable representation of the sediment materials that are mostly readily resuspended or potentially ingested by organisms. It is recommended that the binding of contaminants by the fine sediment fraction be considered when more detailed investigations of contaminant bioavailability are required for site-specific assessments.

## 3.2 Application of the WOE Assessment Framework

If the conclusions from the evaluation of chemical and ecotoxicological evidence are ambivalent and further investigations are required, then this will involve the application of the WOE assessment framework. The WOE investigation should combine assessments of:

- (i) sediment chemistry to measure contaminant concentrations, compare to SQGVs (if available) and identify COPCs. These measurements may include chemistry-based bioavailability tests (e.g. porewater measurements, AVS, or biomimetic approaches for hydrophobic organic contaminants).
- (ii) toxicity testing (e.g. multiple species, varying exposure pathways, acute and chronic endpoints such as mortality, reproduction, development, growth, avoidance).
- (iii) bioaccumulation/biomagnification, and
- (iv) benthic community structure (e.g. ecological malfunction)

The WOE framework allows decisions to be reached when a single LOE is insufficient for making decisions, e.g. if SQGVs do not exist for the contaminants, if there are no appropriate toxicity tests that are sensitive to the contaminants of concern.

The WOE approach tabulates and ranks the results of all individual LOEs used, such as sediment chemistry (e.g. exceedance of trigger values), elutriate and bioavailability testing (exceedance of the relevant criteria), toxicity testing (elevated toxicity compared to controls), bioaccumulation (significant differences compared to controls), and benthic community structure (reduced benthic diversity or abundance relative to controls).

The approach outlined builds on previous publications on WOE assessment frameworks (Chapman et al., 2002; Chapman and Anderson, 2005; Simpson et al., 2005; Wenning et al., 2005). The intention of the WOE framework is to provide a process for evaluating LOEs that is sufficiently prescriptive that it can be applied by reasonably informed regulators, consultants and industry personnel, but sufficiently flexible that site-specific assessments can be made in a transparent manner through the application of best professional judgement. Changes to the WOE framework over time will mostly deal with how best to incorporate new LOEs or better utilise existing LOE that are based on more rigorous tools and techniques. Changes to SQGVs will occur as cause-effect relationships are developed for greater varieties of benthic organisms for a wider range of sediment properties.

In applying the WOE approach, it is important to recognise that the science is not yet up to providing a clear prescriptive approach that covers the complexity of environmental contamination. At the end of the day, it is the scientific rigor associated with the various LOEs that is important, not the following of a prescriptive approach.

## 3.3 Lines-of-evidence (LOEs) and LOE Scoring

The WOE framework is designed to integrate the four major LOEs comprising chemistry, toxicity, bioaccumulation and ecology. Each of these is derived from one or more assessments that together contribute to the scoring for the LOE in that category. The following pages discuss the process for deriving scores for each major LOE.

### 3.3.1 CHEMISTRY

The LOE for chemistry follows the decision tree outlined in Figure 1. The first step is to compare the measured chemical contaminant concentrations in a sediment with the sediment quality guideline SQGVs provided in Table 2.

If the SQGV for a particular contaminant is not exceeded, it is unlikely that it will result in any biological impact for organisms inhabiting that sediment. COPCs are contaminants that moderately exceed the SQGVs. Contaminants that greatly exceed the SQGVs are termed contaminants of concern (COCs).

The SQGVs apply to total concentrations of individual metal and organic contaminants, and for some contaminant classes (e.g. PAHs that can be grouped to simplify assessments). The predictive ability of SQGVs depends on the procedure used for their derivation, the contaminant class being considered, and whether the main exposure is aqueous or dietary (see Part 2). Future refinement of these SQGVs will result from better defined causality relationships and exposure effects models (Simpson and Batley, 2007).

The total concentration (TC, mg/kg dry weight) of the individual chemical contaminant (or contaminant class) in the sediment is compared to its SQGV and SQG-high values.

TC<SQGV	:	effects negligible	(LOE score 1)
TC>SQGV<SQG-high	:	effects possible	(LOE score 2: COPC)
TC>SQG-high	:	effects expected	(LOE score 3: COC)

#### Bioavailability modification of SQGVs

For contaminants that exceed the SQGVs, it is possible to consider only the fraction of the contaminant that is bioavailable, as indicated in Figure 1. There are a wide range of chemistry-based bioavailability tests for contaminants and the value of the information gained from these tests should be considered on a sediment-specific basis. For metal contaminants, total particulate metal (TPM, or total recoverable metals) measurement techniques that utilise concentrated acids are likely to include mineralised forms of metals that are not considered bioavailable. In most cases, it is therefore appropriate to measure the acid-extractable metal (AEM) concentration and compare this value to the SQGV to obtain the LOE score. Caution is noted, however, in applying AEM measurements to sediments which contain metals that are recognised as being sparingly soluble in 1 M HCl. For metals such as copper and mercury, a combination of AEM and TPM measurements may be necessary to accurately describe their forms and potential bioavailability (see Part 2).

Acid-volatile sulfide (AVS) and in some cases organic carbon, are metal binding phases that modify the bioavailability of many metal contaminants (i.e. Ag, Cd, Cu, Hg, Ni, Pb and Zn) and can be used to modify the application of the SQGVs for some metals (see Appendix A6). The presence of AVS also indicates that sediments are sufficiently reducing that chromium should be in the form of Cr(III), rather than the more toxic Cr(VI) form if present in pore waters.

The speciation (forms and accessibility) of sediment organic carbon (TOC) modifies the bioavailability of many organic contaminants, and measurements of TOC can be used to modify the application of the sediment quality SQGV for some organic contaminants. Organic carbon speciation (e.g. black carbon) can be used to modify EqP models, and biomimetic techniques (e.g. using semi-permeable membrane devices (SPMDs) or adsorbants such as Tenax®TA) that examine the lability of sediment-sorbed organic contaminants can be used to assess

bioavailability. The application of chemistry-based bioavailability tests to modify the application of the SQGVs is described in more detail in Part 2.

### Examining pore waters and elutriates

The examination of sediment-associated pore waters provides another chemistry LOE. If the concentrations of contaminants exceed the water quality guideline values (WQGs), then there is also potential environmental concern, since most benthic organisms ingest pore water. Water quality SQGVs have been derived for many contaminants (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000a), based on data for a range of water-column organisms, however, where sufficient data are available, it is possible to derive SQGVs specific for pore waters, using only toxicity data for benthic organisms.

Because it may be difficult to obtain sufficient pore water for some analyses, an additional option is to undertake a sediment elutriate test and use analyses of the elutriate as an indication of potentially soluble contaminants.

The evaluation of pore water or elutriate results against WQGs is similar to the application of the SQGVs. The concentration of the contaminant in the pore water or elutriate is compared to the WQGs that protect 95 and 90% (HC5 and HC10, respectively) of species respectively where WQGs are available that have been derived on the basis of species sensitivity distributions (SSDs). Results evaluated as follows:

Concentration < WQG HC5: effects negligible (LOE score 1)

WQG HC5 < concentration < WQG HC10: effects possible (LOE score 2: COPC)

Concentration > WQG HC10: effects expected (LOE score 3: COC)

If the WQGs are low reliability and not based on SSDs, the respective scores of 1, 2 or 3 might apply for: Concentration < WQGs, Concentration/ WQGs = 1-5 and Concentration/ WQGs >5. In some cases, a consideration of bioavailability (speciation) of contaminants in the pore waters might be desirable.

### Application of the chemistry LOE

- (i) The total concentrations of chemical contaminants are measured in the bulk sediment and compared to the SQGVs. For metals, the use of AEM may be suitable.
- (ii) If applicable, bioavailability-modifications of SQGVs are applied.
- (iii) COPCs and COCs are identified from the exceedances of SQGVs and LOE scores calculated.
- (iv) Concentrations of chemical contaminants are measured in the porewaters or elutriates and LOE scores and COPCs and COCs are identified from the WQGs.
- (v) A tabular summary is prepared of the LOE scores for the SQGVs (and WQGs for porewaters or elutriates) and a final LOE score for chemistry determined for the WOE assessment matrix.
- (vi) Identified COPCs and COCs are listed to aid assignment of causality in the assessment of toxicity and ecology.

For both metals and organics, an overall score for the chemistry LOE, would normally be dictated by the highest score of any of the individual assessments. More than one

contaminant with a high score would give more weight to the chemistry LOE score than that for a single contaminant. Examples of the application of the chemistry LOE are given in Part 2.

### 3.3.2 TOXICITY

The LOE for toxicity includes results from a range of toxicity tests. These tests may comprise a combination of acute, sub-acute and chronic tests, and pore water, elutriate water and whole sediment tests. All toxicity tests may have attributes that make them more or less appropriate for specific situations and the test provider, relevant guidance documents, or regulators should be consulted to determine which tests are most appropriate for the assessment. Whole-sediment toxicity tests are more relevant than porewater tests because:

- (i) once isolated from sediments, pore waters are not stable, i.e. losses of contaminants will occur,
- (ii) many of the test organisms used do not normally interact with sediment pore waters, although they act as surrogates for species that do.

Marine and freshwater testing with amphipods has been most widely used, although tests using benthic algae, copepods, bivalves, polychaete worms are now in common usage. Chronic toxicity tests are more ecologically relevant than acute or sub-acute toxicity tests. However, there are fewer chronic tests available than acute tests, and the test available may not always be appropriate for the test situation. It is frequently observed that the variability in results is greater for chronic tests than for acute tests, i.e. there will be a greater number of 'false positives' (classifying non-toxic sediment as toxic). With aquatic toxicity, acute to chronic ratios (usually a factor of 10) are applied to acute toxicity data to approximate chronic toxicity. There are insufficient data from whole sediment toxicity tests to yet determine how appropriate such an approach will be.

Guidance for the correct application of some, but not all, toxicity tests is discussed in detail in many documents, e.g. USEPA (1994, 1995, 2001) and Simpson et al. (2005). Toxicity tests other than those shown can also be applied. The intent is to have a balance of tests that respond to the COPC.

There is ongoing debate as to the ecological significance of many sub-lethal and biomarker measures in ecological risk assessment. The use of sub-lethal tests and biomarker responses are only considered appropriate where data exist to demonstrate that a concentration-response exists that corresponds to measurable effects (e.g. toxicity indicators such as growth, reproduction or development). As yet there are few sub-lethal tests and biomarker responses that meet these criteria.

As with chemical testing, it is important that the sample used for toxicity testing has the same concentrations of chemicals and bioavailability that it had in the field situation. The greater the amount of sample manipulation and the longer the storage time before testing, the larger changes to contaminant bioavailability will be. It is recommended that toxicity tests be undertaken as soon as practical after collection of sediments from the field. Storage of sediments for periods longer than eight weeks before testing is not recommended. Staggered sampling and chemical analyses may be required for larger risk assessment project.

The toxicity LOE is used as follows:

- (i) Generally, a minimum of three toxicity tests should be undertaken, and these tests should comprise both acute and chronic endpoints, and at least one whole-sediment toxicity test. The test results should be presented as 'effect as

a % of control response' (in an uncontaminated sediment with similar properties as the test sediment).

- (ii) Determine whether the toxic effects may be attributed to factors other than the COPCs. For example, ammonia and sulfide at naturally occurring concentrations are not COPCs, but may cause significant toxicity. The sediment may have been too compact for burrowing or insufficiently nutritious (e.g. clay), resulting in non-COPC mortality (may be an example of poor test procedure selection). If non-COPC factors are shown to be the cause of the toxicity, these test results should be discarded from the assessment, and alternative tests may be necessary.
- (iii) Toxicity data are assessed as non-toxic if the response is <20% toxic effect compared to a control response, toxic with significant effects for 20-50%, and toxic with significant and major effects if the response is ≥50%.

The combined toxicity tests are considered in relation to their robustness and sensitivity (overall value), and scored relative to the likelihood of toxic effects. This may utilise additional knowledge of the test procedures, such as the likelihood of false positives and false negatives caused at random or test artefacts. The scoring system again has three categories: 1, 2, and 3, representing low, moderate and high incidence of toxic effects. Scoring of the various assessment tests uses <20%, 20-50% and ≥50% toxicity on whole sediment or pore water respectively

The overall LOE ranking for a sample will again be dominated by the highest score in the suite of tests, generally giving greater confidence with whole sediment over porewater tests and chronic over acute tests. Causality for COPCs may be assigned for toxicity tests in which effects thresholds for individual contaminants are known.

Normally, toxicity testing will be used to demonstrate the absence of toxicity when the SQGV for a particular contaminant is exceeded. If toxicity is observed, its origins cannot necessarily be attributed to the contaminant of interest because of the possibility of other contaminants either contributing to the observed toxicity or being the primary cause. In some situations, knowledge is required of which contaminant(s) or class of contaminants is responsible for the observed toxicity. Toxicity identification and evaluation procedures (TIE) may be applied for this purpose (Part 2).

Examples of the application of the toxicity LOE are given in Part 2.

### **3.3.3 BIOACCUMULATION**

Bioaccumulation studies involve measurements of contaminant accumulation in:

- (i) field-collected native biota,
- (ii) field-transplanted biota (specific species placed *in situ* at the field site for a defined period of time),
- (iii) laboratory transplanted biota (bioaccumulation assays using specific species and sediments collected from the test site), or
- (iv) other indicators of bioaccumulation (e.g. surrogate methods including the use of passive samplers, discussed in Part 2).

The LOE for bioaccumulation also considers biomagnification, which refers to a substance's accumulation through food chains resulting in increased exposure of higher organisms via their



diet. Biomagnification is considered for contaminants that are known to undergo trophic transfer up food chains, e.g. dioxins, PCBs, and methylmercury.

The bioaccumulation LOE is used as follows:

- (i) A paper study (literature review and calculations) should first be undertaken to consider which contaminants may bioaccumulate to concentrations that cause effects. For example, the presence of dioxins at any concentration would necessitate an investigation of bioaccumulation. The bioaccumulation of many hydrophobic organic contaminants (HOCs) may be first evaluated by simple equilibrium partitioning calculations.
- (ii) The results from any bioaccumulation tests undertaken should be presented as bioaccumulated concentrations relative to controls (field or laboratory) and designated as not significantly different from controls ( $p < 0.05$ ), significantly different from controls ( $p < 0.05$ ) but  $\leq 3\times$  concentrations of control, and significantly different from controls ( $p < 0.05$ ) and  $> 3\times$  concentrations of control. Bioaccumulation will be a function of organism age and size and there may be regulation of some metal contaminants by some organisms. The factor of three is chosen simply to provide a graded approach to evaluating the extent of any bioaccumulation, and has no bioaccumulation or toxicological significance. It may be appropriate to modify this factor (e.g. to a factor of 2 or 10) on a contaminant-by-contaminant basis to reflect the propensity of the contaminant to accumulate and any effects-relationships that may exist. However, adequate reasoning would need to be provided if the factor is to be modified. The use of food standards (e.g. FSANZ, 2008) (refer Section 4.4.5, ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000a) is relevant where biota are for human consumption, and should be used as an indicator of excessive contamination.
- (iii) It should be determined whether any of the bioaccumulating contaminants can biomagnify. For example, if dioxins are present, they will biomagnify. If PCBs are present and bioaccumulating, they will biomagnify.
- (iv) The combined results of the bioaccumulation/biomagnification assessment are scored relative to the likelihood of bioaccumulation to high levels. It is unknown whether there will be a physiological response to the bioaccumulated concentration, rather the extent is indicative of the bioavailability of the COPC and that provides an additional LOE to the chemically measured exposure concentrations. The scoring system has three categories: 1, 2, and 3, representing not significant, significant but moderate, and significant and high, respectively. Examples are provided in Part 2.

### 3.3.4 ECOLOGY

Two main types of ecological data may be considered for the ecology LOE:

- (i) benthic community structure data obtained from surveys of test site and reference locations (e.g. Thrush et al., 2008; Chariton et al., 2010a), and
- (ii) benthic community response data from manipulative experiments, e.g. sediment transplant recolonisation experiments (e.g. Pettigrove and Hoffman, 2005; Chariton et al., 2011).

The major factors determining whether ecological data are included in an assessment will be cost, and whether appropriate reference locations exist. Manipulative (recolonisation) experiments are costly and would generally only be used if the conclusions from benthic community assessment were confounded and a long-term assessment approach was not possible.

Assessments will generally be restricted to the top 10 cm of the sediments because this is where the vast majority of sediment-dwelling organisms live (Chapman. 2002). Guidance for the correct application of some, but not all, benthic ecology response and structure assessments in relation to COPCs is discussed in Part 2.

Special situations affecting the relationships between benthic ecology and possible effects of COPCs include areas of high activity (anthropogenic or otherwise), unstable bed sediments (subject to regular scouring or resuspension), or areas receiving intermittent freshwater inputs. An additional, but important, external factor that may cause differences between reference and test sites is the spatial and temporal variability in recruitment patterns of relevant biota.

The ecology LOE assessments should:

- (i) Determine whether test sites show statistically significant differences compared to reference locations using observational information, univariate analyses and multivariate analyses as indicated in the check list in Part 2.
- (ii) Determine whether the ecological effects may be attributed to factors other than the COPCs, e.g. assess effects due to differences in salinity, proximity to unusual structures and activities that may disturb the environment (e.g. stormwater drains, wharves, boat moorings), sediment particle size, etc. If non-COPC factors may be an important factor affecting the ecological assessment, these test results should be discarded from the assessment, and alternative tests may be necessary.
- (iii) Based on outcomes of the ecological assessment and consideration of non-COPC factors, reconsider whether reference locations were suitable for reaching the assessment conclusions. Alternative reference locations may be needed, or the significance of the results re-assessed.

The combined results of the ecological assessment are scored relative to the likelihood of effects occurring due to COPCs. The scoring system has three categories: 1, 2, and 3, representing not significant, statistically significant but moderate, and statistically significant and high, respectively. Examples are provided in Part 2.

The ecology LOE will always be difficult to interpret, compared to other LOEs, particularly since there will generally be no proven direct link to the contaminant concentrations in the sediment. Ecological evidence will only be correlative and will be very dependent on the sensitivity of the selected indicator(s) to the contaminants (which are often poorly understood) and the power of the sampling program to actually detect significant changes. Particular attention must be given to other factors driving differences between the test and reference sites that have not been identified or measured, and appropriate caution given to interpretation (Anderson et al., 2006; Thrush et al., 2008; Chariton et al., 2010b, 2011). The primary consideration in the first instance is whether the ecosystem is 'healthy', i.e. diverse and abundant biota. It is acknowledged that making the finer distinction as to differences in species between sites and reference locations may be more difficult to link to contaminant impacts.

### 3.4 Weight-of-evidence Ranking

The WOE framework is designed to integrate the four major LOEs comprising chemistry, toxicity, bioaccumulation and ecology. Each of these major LOEs is derived from single or multiple tests or experiments that represent single LOE. The scores for each LOE are tabulated in a decision matrix as shown in Table 3, with typical examples of its application shown in Table 4. The overall assessment is based on the support of elevated scores in the chemistry LOE by elevated scores in one or more of the other LOEs. The WOE rankings of high, medium and low, equate to findings of significant adverse effects from sediment contamination, possible adverse effects from sediment contamination, and no adverse effects, respectively.

**Table 3. Weight-of-evidence decision matrix (not all possible LOE or cases included)**

LINE OF EVIDENCE	RANKING		
	3	2	1
<b>Chemistry</b>			
<i>Sediment</i>	Concentration > SQG-high	Concentration > SQGV < SQG-high	Concentration < SQGV
<i>Pore water</i>	Concentration > WQG HC10	WQG HC5 < Concentration < WQG HC10	Concentration < WQG HC5
<b>Toxicity</b>	≥50% effect vs control	20-50% effect vs control	<20% effect vs control
<b>Bioaccumulation</b>	Significantly different (p<0.05) and >3× control	Significantly different (p<0.05) and ≤3× control	Not significantly different from control
<b>Ecology</b>	Significant and high effects on abundance and/or diversity	Significant but moderate effects on abundance and/or diversity	No significant effects on abundance and/or diversity
<b>Weight-of-evidence</b>	<b>Significant adverse effects</b>	<b>Possible adverse effects</b>	<b>No adverse effects</b>

Elevated contaminant concentrations (COPCs and COCs) determined in the chemistry LOE, remain the underlying driver in the WOE assessment framework for several reasons:

- (i) In most sediment quality assessments, it is the concentrations of contaminants that are the key concern (i.e. suspected to be the cause of the effects);
- (ii) Protecting pristine areas from contaminant impacts is a common focus of risk assessments; and
- (iii) Management options for remediation of contaminated sediments will generally be most easily guided by concentrations of COCs.

Table 4. Examples of weight-of-evidence decisions

Case	Line of Evidence <sup>a</sup>				Weight-of-evidence (WOE) Score	Overall Assessment
	Chemistry (metals-organics)	Toxicity	Bioaccumulation / Biomagnification	Ecology		
W1	3	3	2 or 3	3	3	Significant adverse effects from sediment contamination
W2	3	3	2 or 3	2	3	Significant adverse effects from sediment contamination
W3	2 or 3	3	2	2	3	Significant adverse effects from sediment contamination
W4	2 or 3	2	1 or 2	2	2	Possible adverse effects from sediment contamination
W5	2	2 or 3	1 or 2	2	2	Possible adverse effects from sediment contamination
W6	2	2	1 or 2	2 or 3	2	Possible adverse effects from sediment contamination
W7	2 or 3	2 or 3	2 or 3	1	2	Toxic chemical stressing system but resistance may have developed at community level
W8	1	2 or 3	1	2 or 3	2	Unmeasured toxic chemicals causing effects on communities is possible
W9	1	2 or 3	1	1	2	Unmeasured physical or chemical causes of toxicity
W10	2 or 3	1	1	2 or 3	2	Chemicals are not bioavailable or community change may not be due to chemicals
W11	1	1	1	2 or 3	1	Changes probably not due to measured contaminants
W12	1 or 2	1	1 or 2	1	1	No adverse effects
W13	1	1	1	1	1	No adverse effects
W14	2 or 3	1	1	1	1	Contaminants unavailable

<sup>a</sup> Values listed in each line of evidence category are the highest scoring assessment in that category, e.g. under chemistry, metals may score 2, organics 3, so 3 is recorded. The greater the number of 3s recorded in a category, the greater is the weight that line of evidence category assumes.

## 4. References

- Anderson, M.J., Hewitt, J.E., Ford, R.B. and Thrush, S.F. (2006). Regional models of benthic ecosystem health: predicting pollution gradients from biological data. Auckland Regional Council, TP317, Auckland, 103 pp.
- ANZECC (1992). Australian water quality guidelines for fresh and marine waters. National Water Quality Management Strategy Paper No 4, Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council, Canberra.
- ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000a). Australian and New Zealand guidelines for fresh and marine water quality. Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council/Agricultural and Resource Management Council of Australia and New Zealand.
- ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000b). National Water Quality Management Strategy, Australian guidelines for water quality monitoring and reporting. Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council/Agricultural and Resource Management Council of Australia and New Zealand.
- Batley, G.E., Burton, G.A., Chapman, P.M., and Forbes, V.E. (2002). Uncertainties in sediment quality weight of evidence assessments. *Human Ecol. Risk Assess.*, 8, 1517-1547.
- Batley, G.E. and Simpson, S.L. (2009). Development of guidelines for ammonia in estuarine and marine systems. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 58, 1472–1476.
- Batley, G.E., Stahl, R.G., Babut, M.P., Bott, T.L., Clark, J.R., Field, L.J., Ho, K., Mount, D.R., Swartz, R.C. and Tessier, A. (2005). The scientific underpinnings of sediment quality guidelines. In: *Use of Sediment Quality Guidelines and Related Tools for the Assessment of Contaminated Sediments*, Wenning, R., Batley, G., Ingersoll, C. and Moore, D. (editors), SETAC Press, Pensacola, FL, USA.
- Bay, S.M., Ritter, K.J., Vidal-Dorsch, D.E. and Field, L.J. (2012). Comparison of national and regional sediment quality guidelines for classifying sediment toxicity in California. *Integr. Environ. Assess. Manage.*, 8, 597–609.
- Buchman, M.F. (2008). NOAA Screening Quick Reference tables, NOAA OR&R Report 08-1, Seattle WA, Office of Response and Restoration Division, National Oceanic and atmospheric Administration, 34 pages.  
[http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/book\\_shelf/122\\_NEW-SQuiRTs.pdf](http://response.restoration.noaa.gov/book_shelf/122_NEW-SQuiRTs.pdf)
- Calleja, M.L., Marbà, N. and Duarte, C.M. (2007). The relationship between seagrass (*Posidonia oceanica*) decline and sulfide porewater concentration in carbonate sediments. *Estuar. Coastal Shelf Sci.*, 73, 583-588.
- CCME (2002). Canadian Sediment Quality Guidelines for the Protection of Aquatic Life – Summary Tables Update 2002 ([www.ccme.org/publications/ceqg\\_rcqe.html](http://www.ccme.org/publications/ceqg_rcqe.html))
- Chapman, P.M. and Anderson, J. (2005). A decision-making framework for sediment contamination. *Integr. Environ. Assess. Manage.* 1, 163-173.

- Chapman, P.M., McDonald, B.G. and Lawrence, G.S. (2002). Weight-of-evidence issues and frameworks for sediment quality (and other) assessments. *Human Ecol. Risk Assess.*, 8, 1489-1515.
- Chariton, A., Court, L., Colloff, M., Hartley, D. and Hardy, C. (2010a). Ecological assessment of estuarine sediments by pyrosequencing eukaryotic ribosomal DNA. *Front. Ecol. Environ.*, 8, 233-238.
- Chariton, A.A., Roach, A.C., Simpson, S.L. and Batley, G.E. (2010b). The influence of the choice of physical and chemistry variables on interpreting the spatial patterns of sediment contaminants and their relationships with benthic communities. *Mar. Freshwater Res.* *Mar. Freshwater Res.*, 61, 1109-1122.
- Chariton, A.A., Maher, W.A. and Roach A.C. (2011). Recolonisation of estuarine benthic assemblages into translocated, metal-contaminated sediments. *Ecotox.*, 20, 706-18.
- Di Toro, D.M. (2013). The interplay of environmental toxicology and chemistry in the development of sediment quality criteria. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 32, 7-9.
- FSANZ (2008). Australia New Zealand food standards code. Food Standards Australia New Zealand, ANSTAT Pty Ltd, Melbourne
- Leung, K.M.Y., Bjørgesæter, A., Gray, J.S., Li, W.K., Lui, C.S.G., Wang, Y. and Lam, P.K.S. (2005). Deriving sediment quality guidelines from field-based species sensitivity distribution. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 39, 5148–5156.
- Long, .E.R., MacDonald, D.D., Smith, S.L. and Calder, F.D. (1995). Incidence of adverse effects within ranges of chemical concentrations in marine and estuarine sediments. *Environ. Manag.*, 19, 81-97.
- Long, E.R. and Morgan, L.G. (1990). The potential for biological effects of sediment-sorbed contaminants tested in the National Status and Trends Program. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOS OMA 52, Seattle, Washington, USA.
- Lui, C.S.G., Bjørgesæter, A. and Leung K.M.Y. (2013) Deriving field-based sediment quality guidelines from the relationship between species density and contaminant level using a novel nonparametric empirical Bayesian approach. *Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res.* (in press)
- MacDonald, D.D., Carr, R.S., Calder, F.D., Long, E.R. and Ingersoll, C.G. (1996). Development and evaluation of sediment quality guidelines for Florida coastal waters. *Ecotoxicol.*, 5, 253-278.
- MacDonald, D.D., Ingersoll, C.G. and Berger, T.A. (2000). Development and evaluation of consensus-based sediment quality guidelines for freshwater ecosystems. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 39, 20-31.
- Pettigrove, V. and Hoffmann, A. (2005). A field-based microcosm method to assess the effects of polluted urban stream sediments on aquatic macroinvertebrates. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 24, 170-180.
- Simpson, S.L. and Batley, G.E. (2007). Predicting metal toxicity in sediments: A critique of current approaches. *Integr. Environ. Assess. Manage.*, 3, 18-31

- Simpson, S.L., Batley, G.E., Chariton, A.A., Stauber, J.L., King, C.K., Chapman, J.C., Hyne, R.V., Gale, S.A., Roach, A.C. and Maher, W.A. (2005). Handbook for Sediment Quality Assessment. CSIRO, Bangor NSW, 117 pp.
- Smith, S.L., MacDonald, D.D., Keenleyside, K.A., Ingersoll, C.G. and Field, L.J. (1996). A preliminary evaluation of sediment quality assessment values for freshwater ecosystems. *J. Great Lakes Res.*, 22, 624-638.
- Thrush, S.F., Hewitt J.E., Hickey, C.W. and Kelly, S., (2008). Multiple stressor effects identified from species abundance distributions: Interactions between urban contaminants and species habitat relationships. *J. Expt. Mar. Biol. Ecol.*, 366, 160-168.
- USEPA (1994). Methods for measuring the toxicity of sediment-associated contaminants with estuarine and marine amphipods. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Report EPA-600/R-94/025, Narragansett, RI, USA.
- USEPA (1995). QA/QC Guidance for sampling and analysis of sediments, water, and tissues for dredged material evaluations (chemical evaluations). U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water Report EPA 832-B-95-002, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2001). Methods for collection, storage and manipulation of sediments for chemical and toxicological analyses: Technical Manual. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Report EPA 823-B-01-002, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2012). Equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Procedures for the determination of the freely dissolved interstitial water concentrations of nonionic organics. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-012, Washington, DC, USA.
- Wang, F.Y. and Chapman, P.M. (1999). Biological implications of sulfide in sediment - A review focusing on sediment toxicity. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 18, 2526-2532.
- Wenning, R.J., Batley, G.E., Ingersoll, C.G. and Moore, D.W. (2005). Use of sediment-quality guidelines and related tools for the assessment of contaminated sediments. Pensacola (FL): Society of Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, 783 pp.

# **Part II   Rationale and Background Information**





# 1. Sediments and Contaminants

## 1.1 Sources of Sediments and Sediment Contaminants

Aquatic sediments are principally derived from weathering processes, with major transportation from terrestrial sources from under high runoff from storms and floods, and deposition of planktonic life forms in oceans. In addition, discharges from urban, industrial and mining activities are potential sources of particulates. Anthropogenic contaminants, including metals, organics and nutrient elements are associated with particulate and dissolved inputs to natural waters. It is important to distinguish between point source and diffuse inputs. The former includes effluent streams, drains or licensed discharges, which can, if required, be the target of management actions. Diffuse inputs generally lead to a gradual build up of contaminants in sediments, especially in coastal lakes, estuaries and marine waters. Diffuse sources include aerial deposition and land runoff of stormwater. The consideration of ongoing inputs from diffuse sources may be necessary for many assessments.

Particulate matter can act as binding sites for contaminants in soluble forms. Biological processes add particulate matter in the form of algal mats, dead cells, degradation and excretion products of animals, and living and dead plant biomass. Suspended particles gradually settle and accumulate as part of the bottom sediments. Rates of sedimentation vary from as low as 1 mm/y in coastal marine waters, to 10–20 mm/y in some riverine and estuarine systems, although higher rates have been reported in New Zealand. Highest values are found in settling basins removed from high currents and close to point sources, whereas more common values are in the range 3–7 mm/y.

Contaminants are also associated with natural colloids, which can precipitate with aging or with changes in water chemistry. The change in salinity from fresh to saline waters will induce the precipitation of iron and manganese oxyhydroxides from both soluble ions and colloids, carrying with them other metals and organics.

## 1.2 Sediment Properties

### 1.2.1 PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

Physical properties, such as grain size and density, are important in sedimentation and transport processes. Sediments are a heterogeneous mixture of particles ranging from millimetre to sub-micron in size. Typically, sediments are characterised as coarse material, clay/silt and sand fractions, on the basis of separations using 2 mm and 63  $\mu\text{m}$  sieves. Particles >2 mm may consist of shells, rocks, wood, and other detrital materials, and are usually not a source of bioavailable contaminants (Mudroch et al., 1997). The clay/silt fraction has a high surface area and because of its surface chemistry is more likely to adsorb organic and heavy metal contaminants. Particles <63  $\mu\text{m}$  are more common in the gut of sediment-ingesting biota (Tessier et al., 1984). It is not unusual to normalise contaminant analyses on the basis of the clay/silt fraction.

The sand and coarse silt fractions are generally dominated by quartz, sometimes by carbonates (shell, coral etc), and occasionally by other silicates such as feldspar, or rock fragments. Primary silicates may also be present in the sand fraction, but are less evident in silt particles. Clay particles tend to be dominated by secondary silicates. Other secondary minerals such as oxides of aluminium and iron are prominent in the fine silt and clay fractions. This holds for

most terrigenous sediments, and is not dissimilar in coastal marine sediments. Most anthropogenic contaminants (i.e. those associated with human activity) are associated with the clay and silt fractions that generally have high surface area and high concentrations of associated organic matter. In some instances, contaminants may also enter the environment in particulate form, e.g. metal associated with paint flakes and hydrocarbons (including PAHs) associated with deposition of soot, or oil and tar phases.

Sediments are in intimate contact with the water that fills the voids between particles and within the pores of sediment particles. The volume of this interstitial or pore water will be governed by sediment porosity. Sediment particle size is also critical to the ease, and therefore the depths, to which organisms can burrow. This is also dictated by the acceptability to the organism of the chemical environment of the sediment and its associated pore waters. Silty sand is a more acceptable medium for many benthic biota than is more compressible clay.

Physical processes in sediments influence the chemistry of sediments and their associated contaminants. Sediment resuspension can result from wind stirring, tidal currents and boating activities, as well as by biological activities (bioturbation). These processes can lead to particle sorting on the basis of density or size. They also expose particles to a different chemical environment, overlying water versus pore water and usually oxic versus anoxic. In the absence of any physical or biological sediment disturbances, contaminant movement occurs via diffusion processes in sediment pore waters, controlled by factors such as porosity.

### **1.2.2 SEDIMENT CHEMISTRY**

The chemical behaviour and bioavailability of contaminants will be controlled by the sediment geochemistry and the associated pH and redox conditions (dissolved oxygen, sulfide) of the sediment pore waters. The pool of bioavailable metals in sediments is typically much smaller than the total metal concentration and is strongly influenced by metal-binding with sulfides, particulate organic carbon (OC), and iron and manganese oxide solid phases. A significant metal fraction may be present in mineralised forms, and these metals are of little ecological importance as it is unavailable for bioaccumulation. In oxic sediments, the most important metal-binding phases are organic matter and hydrous iron and manganese oxides. In anoxic sediments, many metals (Ag, Cd, Cu, Fe, Hg, Mn, Ni, Pb, Zn) are strongly bound (low solubility) with sulfide minerals, including pyrite and the more reactive acid-volatile sulfide (AVS) phases (e.g. iron monosulfide, FeS). The importance of these metal-binding phases is strongly influenced by particle size, with metal-binding increasing in sediments with greater portions of fine clay or silt sized particles (e.g. <63 µm). The interaction and dynamic equilibrium between the various metal-binding phases creates a great challenge for the development of SQGs for metals in sediments. Future bioavailability models and SQGs should explicitly consider pools of AVS, OC and iron and manganese oxides as phases that reduce toxicity.

Organic contaminants can be divided into hydrophobic (non-polar, water-insoluble) and hydrophilic (polar, soluble) species (hydrophobic organic contaminants), and further subdivided as acidic, basic or neutral compounds. The former distinction based on water solubility can be related to the compound's octanol:water partition coefficient. Due to their lower solubility and greater propensity to bind to sediments, hydrophobic organics tend to accumulate to higher concentrations. Organic matter, either as discrete particles or as coatings on inorganic substrates, is the primary adsorbing phase for hydrophobic organics, but depending on their charge, inorganic phases may be able to bind some compounds. Black carbon (pyrogenic carbon or soot, including coal) has been shown to be an important phase for binding hydrophobic organic contaminants (e.g. PAHs) in sediments. To assess the

bioavailability of HOCs in sediments, the speciation of organic carbon may require measurement as the strength of binding of HOCs is often many orders of magnitude greater for black carbon than for carbon derived from break down of plant or animal matter.

While metals may exist in both complexed and labile forms, they are not subject to the same degradation processes that are common to many organic molecules. In considering the environmental risk posed by organics and metals, the chemical form or speciation will be important, as will be the half-lives of chemical, physical and microbial degradation processes. In practice, hydrophilic organics are typically less persistent than hydrophobic compounds, because they are more amenable to hydrolysis and other solution degradation processes.

The redox state of sediments (i.e. whether they in an oxidising or reducing environment) will be defined by the oxygen content of the pore waters. It is possible for sediments to be oxygen-deficient several millimetres below the surface. Oxygen deficiency will alter the chemistry of metals such as iron and manganese which in turn will affect the behaviour of other heavy metals that were previously bound to oxides of iron and manganese. Iron (III) hydrous oxides will be reduced to more soluble iron (II) species, while hydrous manganese oxides will be reduced to soluble manganese (II) species. Manganese, being more readily reduced than iron, appears in the pore water column at a higher zone in the sediment. The redox boundary is not necessarily stationary, and steady-state conditions may not apply because the boundary may move up and down through the sediments more quickly than the chemistry can respond. Most organic contaminants are not directly susceptible to redox changes, but indirectly the presence of bacteria under specified redox conditions will affect the stability of such contaminants to microbial degradation processes.

The major nutrient elements of environmental concern in sediments are nitrogen and phosphorus. Both are present in organic and inorganic forms. Inorganic forms of nitrogen include nitrate, nitrite and ammonia. Organic nitrogen undergoes bacterial degradation and denitrification via ammonia, nitrite, and nitrate, ultimately to elemental nitrogen,  $N_2$ . In oxygen-limited systems, these reactions can stop at ammonia. Phosphorus exists as phosphates, both monomeric and polymeric, and in sediments is usually bound with iron. Considerable phosphorus and nitrogen can also be bound by bacteria and it is important to consider living microscopic benthos as part of the sediment structure.

Sediments represent a potential source of contaminants to the overlying water and hence can influence water quality. The natural release of sediment contaminants is controlled by their dissolution into the sediment pore waters. Diffusion of these contaminants to the water column will occur if the pore water concentration exceeds that of the overlying water. The measurement of the fluxes of contaminants can be obtained using dialysis samplers (porewater peepers), benthic chambers or corer reactors. For many metals and some metalloids, the technique of diffusive gradients in thin films (DGT) now provides a useful method for measuring porewater metal concentrations and fluxes at the sediment water interface (Tankere-Muller et al., 2006; Simpson et al., 2012a; Panther et al., 2013).

Burrowing organisms have a significant impact on sediment chemistry and physics. Bioturbation, or burrowing activities, affects the sediment profile, by physically translocating contaminated sediments, mixing and redistributing the contamination.

## 2. Sediment Sampling

### 2.1 Collection of Sediments

For the assessment of sediment quality, surface sediments are commonly collected, however, when evaluating the risks of dredging activities to determine their suitability for ocean disposal, deeper sediments may also require collection (Environment Canada, 1994; ASTM, 2000; USEPA, 2001; Simpson et al., 2005). Generally, most epifaunal and infaunal organisms are found in the upper 10 cm of sediments. Some epibenthic species (e.g. shrimps, certain amphipods) might only be exposed to surficial sediments (0-1 cm) while others (e.g. bivalves, polychaetes) that are infaunal irrigators might receive their primary exposure from sediments that are several cm in depth. Determining contaminant concentrations in both the 0-2 and 2-10 cm depth sediments should provide sufficient information to assess major contaminant exposure pathways for most organisms.

A large range of devices is available for the collection of sediments and reviews of their uses and suitability for different collection conditions are available (Mudroch and Azcue, 1995; USEPA, 2001; Simpson et al., 2005). The most important requirement for sediment collection devices is that the integrity of the collected sediment is maintained, because disruption of the sediment's structure will distort its chemical and physical characteristics. Mixing of previously redox-stratified chemical substrates with layers of differing particle size and composition will influence the bioavailability of contaminants and the potential toxicity of the sediment (Simpson and Batley, 2003).

Field measurements and observations are important for any assessment of sediment quality. Measurements should include:

- (i) water quality parameters (pH, redox potential, dissolved oxygen, temperature, conductivity/salinity, turbidity and water depth) in the water column 5-20 cm above the sampling site, and
- (ii) pH and redox potential of the sediments.

The Handbook for Sediment Quality Assessment (Simpson et al., 2005) provides guidance for making these measurements.

### 2.2 Sediment Manipulations and Storage

Any form of disturbance to the sediments, whether through the act of sampling, field processing or transportation, will affect the bioavailability of the contaminants (USEPA, 2001; Simpson et al., 2005). Field processing, or manipulation, of sediments may result in changes in the speciation, and bioavailability, of substances by disruption of the equilibrium in the pore water/sediment system. Although disturbances to the sediments cannot be eliminated, it is important that they are minimised (Simpson et al., 2005).

Maximum holding times are governed by sediment type, contaminant characteristics and the tests to be undertaken on the sediments. Following collection, sediment samples should be stored cold (on ice) to reduce loss of volatiles and decrease bacterial activity. The general

recommendation is to store sediments and pore water in the dark at 4°C. Sample holding times and storage methods will vary depending on the use of the collected sediments or sediment components (e.g. porewater separation and analysis). Samples for analyses of total metals may be held indefinitely, however changes to metal speciation and partitioning of contaminants between sediments and pore waters will begin occurring within days of collection (Carr and Chapman, 1995; Simpson and Batley, 2003). Changes in bacterial activity will cause changes to the concentrations of ammonia, sulfide, iron(II) and biologically-active sediment components, particularly in pore waters. It is generally recommended that if chemical testing of pore waters is of interest, they should be extracted immediately after collection and appropriate preservation procedures and storage containers used for each analyte (may need separate containers). Most extractable organics (e.g. phthalates, organochlorine (OC) pesticides, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), PAHs, hydrocarbons, dioxins) should be extracted from sediments within 14 days of sample collection, while 7 days should be the maximum storage length before extraction of samples for analyses of organic contaminants that are susceptible to losses due to volatility or microbial degradation. Longer storage times may be appropriate depending on properties of the sediments, the concentrations and types of contaminants. Extended storage of sediments may result in losses of labile or volatile contaminants (e.g. ammonia, volatile organics, AVS) or changes to the redox properties of the sediments due to increased or decreased bacterial activity.

Manipulation of sediments in the field or laboratory is often undertaken prior to chemical or toxicity testing. This may involve sieving to remove large particles and debris, or the separation of native biota, or homogenisation so that a large sample can be used for a number of chemical and biological tests. Most manipulations of sediments will alter the properties of the sediments and affect contaminant bioavailability, and the effects of these on the test data need to be evaluated. In particular oxidation of iron (II) will lower the pH or pore waters with enhanced release of heavy metals from sediments. All procedures used to prepare sediment samples for analyses and tests should aim to minimise disturbances and should be fully documented in reports.

It is desirable to undertake some assessment of how sample manipulation may affect the concentrations (e.g. loss of volatiles), bioavailability (e.g. changes to AVS, partitioning in pore waters) and toxicity of contaminants in the collected sediments. For the freshly collected whole-sediments that have been minimally manipulated, measurements of pH, redox potential, TOC, AVS, iron, particle size analysis, and analyses of total and weakly-extractable contaminants, and porewater contaminants will aid interpretation of bioavailability and toxicity test data. For sediments that undergo major manipulation (e.g. sieving) or are stored for long periods of time before testing (e.g. longer than 4 weeks), re-analysis is desirable for those parameters likely to be affected by these manipulations (e.g. pH, AVS, pore waters, volatile organics).

## 2.3 Sediment Pore Water

Sediment pore water is defined as the water occupying the spaces between sediment particles. Typically pore water will occupy 30-80% of the volume of sediment, the volume being greater for fine-grained (silty) sediments than for sandy sediments. Water currents driven by surface water movements (e.g. currents, tides, wind) or groundwater upwelling will influence porewater composition and stability. In many depositional sediments, pore waters will be relatively static and it is expected that thermodynamic equilibrium will exist between contaminant concentrations in the pore water and in surrounding sediments. The

concentrations of contaminants in the pore waters of surface sediments (0-1 mm) will control the flux of contaminants to the overlying waters or into the burrows of organisms. Sediment characteristics (e.g. pH, organic carbon, sulfides, mineralogy, particle size) will greatly affect the partitioning of contaminants between the sediments and pore water. Porewater contaminant concentrations are frequently higher than overlying water concentrations and are easily dispersed and diluted within the system.

Because many benthic organisms are in direct contact with sediment pore waters, this component of sediments is considered to be a major exposure pathway for benthic organisms. The accurate measurement of contaminant concentrations in sediment pore waters is therefore useful for assessing the bioavailability of contaminants. Generally, no evaluation will be required for sediments with coarse particles (sand/gravel) that have little binding capacity for sediment contaminants, or compacted clays that have little accessible pore water with which organisms can interact.

Methods for the isolation of pore waters from sediments are described in Carr and Nipper (2003), Chapman et al. (2002) and Simpson et al. (2005). It is important to recognise that all porewater isolation methods have been shown to alter porewater chemistry and affect metal contaminant bioavailability and toxicity. Because pore waters will generally contain very low dissolved oxygen concentrations, and often have high concentrations of easily oxidisable species (e.g. Fe (II)), maintaining these properties following isolation from sediment is practically impossible.

Passive samplers, such as DGTs for metals and some metalloids (Zhang et al., 1995; Tankere-Muller et al., 2006; Panther et al., 2013) and SPMDs, PEDs, SPME, and POM for non-ionic organics (USEPA, 2012) are increasingly being used to provide information on concentrations of labile contaminants in pore waters and are also finding applications in the assessment of sediments (Maruya et al., 2010; Ding et al., 2012; Dabrin et al., 2012; Mackenbach et al., 2012; Simpson et al., 2013).

### 3. Derivation of Sediment Quality Guidelines

The many current approaches to the derivation of sediment quality guidelines can be broadly classified as being based on:

- (i) empirical approaches that use data from matching sediment chemistry to the effects or WOE database from laboratory or field exposures to contaminated sediments,
- (ii) an equilibrium partitioning approach and the application of existing water quality guidelines to sediment pore waters (often termed mechanistic guidelines)

These have been comprehensively reviewed elsewhere (Batley et al., 2005) and have formed the basis, either individually or collectively, of regulatory frameworks in many parts of the world (den Besten et al., 2003; Babut et al., 2005).

#### 3.1 Empirical Guidelines

The use of large effects databases is now the most widely accepted approach to sediment guideline development and formed the basis of the Australian and New Zealand interim SQGs. The first approach of this type was reported by Long and Morgan (1990), based on an assessment of the potential for biological effects of sediment-sorbed contaminants in several hundred sites sampled as part of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration's (NOAA) National Status and Trends Program in the U.S. The study examined data obtained from the equilibrium partitioning approach, the spiked sediment bioassay approach and other various approaches to sediment quality criteria. The chemical concentrations observed and predicted by the different methods to be associated with biological effects were sorted, and the lower 10 percentile and median concentrations were identified along with an apparent effects threshold. The lower 10 percentile data were identified as Effects Range-Low (ERL), below which adverse effects on sediment associated species occurred infrequently), and the median as Effects Range-Median (ERM) and above which adverse effects were frequently observed. Data were used to rank sites in relation to the effects range values.

Unlike the water quality guidelines, which are based on effects data for individual contaminants, a large portion of the effects data considered in empirical approaches and used to derive SQGs suffer from the presence of co-occurring contaminants. Although the observed effects are assigned to specific contaminants, it is recognised that these effects are not attributable to that contaminant alone. Empirical guidelines do not explicitly attribute the observed toxicity to either the dissolved or particulate phases.

It should be emphasised that this approach was not originally intended to develop guidelines, but rather to compare and rank sites, to identify priority contaminants, to estimate the relative potential for toxic effects and to itemise and describe the kinds of toxic effects previously observed in association with specific contaminant concentrations. Approaches to matching of biological and chemical data were discussed in a subsequent paper by Long et al. (1995). Recognising the considerable uncertainty arising from co-occurrence of contaminants, and that sediments may exist with multiple exceedances of the ERL or ERM values, Long et al. (1998)



suggested that mean sediment quality guideline quotients (SQGQ) should be calculated and used for assessments. This approach involves dividing the measured concentrations of each contaminant by its ERL or ERM value (ERMs were more commonly used), adding up all the ratios and then dividing by the number of contaminants. Usually separate classes of contaminants were identified (e.g. metals, hydrophobic organics, pesticides) and the mean quotient calculated for each class, then the mean taken of the combined contaminant classes (Long and Morgan, 1998; Long et al., 1998; Fairey et al., 2001; Long et al., 2006; Simpson and Spadaro, 2011). Greater mean quotients were taken to indicate greater risk of effects. This approach differs considerably from the toxic unit (TU) approach that is often applied for waters where the TUs are summed, as the quotients are derived solely from effects due to the individual contaminants.

MacDonald and coworkers (including Long) (1992, 1996, 2000) developed an expanded biological effects database for sediments (referred to by the acronym BEDS) for the Florida Department of Environmental Protection (FDEP), which is one of the most comprehensive documentations of sediment quality assessment yet reported. The data were sorted into effects and no effects data. From the no-effects data, the 50th percentile (No Effect Range Median, NERM) and the 85th percentile (No Effect Range High, NER-H) were determined. The threshold effects level (TEL) defines the upper limit of sediment contaminant concentrations of no-effects data and was calculated as the geometric mean of the ERL and NERM. A safety factor of 2 was applied to the TEL values to define a no-observed-effects level (NOEL). The effects range approach has been applied to both fresh (Smith et al., 1996) and marine waters (MacDonald et al., 1996) and was adopted in Canada (CCME, 2002)

$$\text{TEL} = (\text{ERL} \times \text{NERM})^{1/2}$$

The probable effects concentrations (PEL) defining the lower limit of the range of contaminant concentrations that are usually associated with adverse biological effects was defined as the geometric mean of the ERM and NER-H values:

$$\text{PEL} = (\text{ERM} \times \text{NER-H})^{1/2}$$

A major issue is that although one or more of these chemicals may have produced the effect, it is ascribed to all chemicals in the mixture. Effects levels entered for some chemicals may therefore be well below actual effects thresholds.

Ingersoll et al. (1996) compared the effectiveness of ERL, ERM, TEL, PEL and no effect concentrations (NEC). They considered the ability of these sediment effects criteria to correctly classify toxicity or no toxicity and the respective abilities to classify non-toxic samples as toxic (Type I error, false positive) or toxic samples as non-toxic (Type II error or false negative). They concluded that ERMs and ERLs were generally as reliable as PELs and TELs in respectively classifying samples as toxic or non-toxic, but stressed the need to use field generated data, noting the problems with other contaminants in contributing to the observed effect.

The fact that the guidelines were primarily developed from estuarine and marine data was not seen as a limitation to their application and in the case of water quality, and the statistical difference between marine and freshwater guidelines is insufficient to preclude their combination.

There is clearly merit in the use of effects databases, provided their limitations are acknowledged and they are applied more as screening tools to delineate areas of concern. It is important that data are continually updated and revised and guideline values that are inconsistent with other findings should be the subject of more detailed investigations.

It is worth remarking that the number of significant figures used in the early empirical guideline values were not justified given the appreciable errors not only in the analyses, but in the general level of confidence in the effects data. Appropriately rounded off numbers will be used in the ANZECC/ARMCANZ guidelines.

Logistic regression modelling was applied in a third form of empirical guideline that has increasingly been applied in sediment assessments (Field et al., 1999; 2002). This approach uses statistical analysis of large matching data sets for chemical (18 contaminants) and effects (survival of marine amphipods) to relate chemical concentrations to the probability of sediment toxicity. The data used for each regression analysis were first screened to reduce the influence of samples that did not contribute to the toxic effects associated with that contaminant. The individual models were then combined in a single mixture effects model. While equally as effective as the other empirical approaches (Bay et al., 2012), this approach does not provide specific guideline values, and is therefore a little more complicated to apply.

A number of other effects based approaches have been used, including apparent effects thresholds, sediment effects concentrations, and screening level criteria. These are reviewed in detail elsewhere (Batley et al., 2005). Where several different methods for deriving SQGs result in a quantitatively similar value, consensus guidelines have been developed that are typically calculated as the geometric means of the SQGs from the different methods (MacDonald et al., 2000).

## 3.2 Mechanistic Guidelines

A mechanistic approach to SQGs uses equilibrium partitioning based on the assumption that the critical factor controlling sediment toxicity is the concentration of contaminant in the sediment pore water (Di Toro, et al., 1991; Di Toro, 2013). Water quality guidelines can be applied to porewater contaminants, and the sediment quality guideline value can be defined by the concentration of contaminant in the sediment that is in equilibrium with the water quality guideline concentration in the pore water. The ratio of the contaminant concentration in the sediment ( $C_s$ ) and its concentration in the surrounding water ( $C_w$ ) is defined as the partition coefficient,  $K_D$ .

The approach is attractive to many regulators because toxicity can be predicted using LC50 values obtained from water-only toxicity tests. The major research effort has been devoted to attempts to predict the factors controlling the partitioning of contaminants within the sediment solid phases, into pore waters. The approach is most readily applicable to hydrophobic organic chemicals and has been incorporated for these chemicals in the derivation of equilibrium sediment benchmarks (ESBs) and the NOAA and FDEP guidelines.

An implicit assumption of applying the equilibrium partitioning approach to sediments is that pore waters represent the major uptake route for sediment contaminants. Mechanistic guidelines (the EqP approach) attribute the observed toxicity to the dissolved phase, where organisms receive equivalent exposure from water or from any equilibrated phase, either from pore water via respiration, from sediment via ingestion or other sediment-integument exchange, or from a mixture of exposure routes. This is quite likely to be the case for many hydrophobic organic contaminants (HOCs), although dietary uptake cannot be discounted.

Dietary uptake of metals is increasingly being demonstrated as a major route of metal exposure and accumulation (Luoma and Rainbow, 2005; Simpson, 2005). For deposit or detritus feeders, which comprise a major portion of benthic invertebrates, particulate phases may represent a major route of metal exposure (Rainbow, 2007; Luoma and Rainbow, 2008; Camusso et al.,

2012). Only a few studies have attempted to quantify the toxic effects of dietary metal exposure to benthic organisms (Croteau and Luoma, 2009; Casado-Martinez et al., 2010; Campana et al., 2012). Despite the increasing evidence that dietary uptake of contaminants is a significant exposure route, dietary exposure has not been explicitly accounted for in the development of concentration–response models for the prediction of sediment metal toxicity. Although not demonstrated, it may well be that the most sensitive organisms are those that respond to the porewater concentrations of contaminants only, despite the greater ‘available’ pool of particle-associated contaminants in some sediments.

### 3.2.1 ORGANICS

For non-ionic organic chemicals, it has been well-established that the partitioning is dominated by sediment organic carbon (Di Toro et al., 1991). For sediments having >0.2 % organic carbon (dry weight), sediment quality guidelines normalised to mg/kg organic carbon, have been shown to be valid for a range of sediment types. This cut-off in organic carbon content is judged to be necessary because at lower organic carbon contents, second-order effects such as particle size and adsorption to non-organic mineral fractions become more important.

The sediment/pore water partition coefficient  $K_D$ , is related to the organic carbon partition coefficient,  $K_{OC}$ , and  $f_{OC}$ , the fraction by weight of organic carbon:

$$K_D = f_{OC} K_{OC}$$

Note that  $K_{OC}$  is empirically related to the readily-determined octanol/water partition coefficient  $K_{OW}$ .

The equilibrium partitioning model predicts that sediments will be toxic when the pore water concentration exceeds the water-only toxic concentration. Thus if WQG ( $\mu\text{g/L}$ ) is the no-effect concentration in water, then the sediment quality guideline value SQG ( $\mu\text{g/kg}$ ) is given by the partition coefficient  $K_D$  (L/kg) between pore water and sediment according to the equation:

$$\text{SQG} = K_D \text{ WQG}$$

in terms of measurable parameters:

$$\text{SQG} = f_{OC} K_{OC} \text{ WQG}$$

Using published data for the toxicity to marine and freshwater amphipods, Di Toro et al. (1991) demonstrated that the incidence of mortality increased dramatically when the ratio of the pore water concentration to water-only LC50, exceeded a value of 1. This agreement implied that benthic organisms were as sensitive as water-column organisms. They rationalised that, if the pore water and sediment are in equilibrium, then the effective exposure concentration is the same regardless of the exposure route.

Using a predicted sediment toxic unit (STU) as given by:

$$\text{STU} = (C_s/f_{OC})/(K_{OC} \cdot \text{LC50}_{\text{water-only}})$$

where  $C_s/f_{OC}$  is the organic-carbon-normalised concentration of contaminant in the sediment, a similar plot to that for pore water toxicity can be obtained for a range of organics, with 100% mortality occurring where  $\text{STU} = 1$ .

The USEPA has accepted the equilibrium partitioning approach for hydrophobic organics and have commissioned a number of studies addressing the derivation of criteria for specific organic chemicals. The criteria have been derived on an organic carbon basis by determining  $K_{OC}$  and the WQG according to:

$$SQG_{OC} = K_{OC} WQG$$

The current water quality criteria are used for WQG.

It is important to recognise that the normalisation to organic carbon is only valid when  $f_{OC} > 0.2\%$ , as discussed earlier. For polar organics, the  $K_{OC}$  model can overestimate the bioavailable concentration, because adsorption can be enhanced by factors other than hydrophobicity. The general behaviour of such organics will also differ because they are susceptible to a range of degradative and removal processes.

The consideration of mixtures of organics was first applied to PAHs (Swartz et al. 1995) with the development of the  $\Sigma$ PAH sediment toxicity model that used a combination of equilibrium partitioning and quantitative structure activity relationships (QSARs) to derive a mixture toxicity threshold. This was improved by Di Toro et al. (2000) in an approach applicable to all non-ionic organic chemical mixtures.

Equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) represent site-specific concentrations for non-ionic organic chemicals in sediments which are protective of the presence of freshwater and marine benthic organisms (USEPA, 2003a,b,c,d; 2008; 2012). This approach utilises EqP relationships to estimate the bioavailability of non-ionic organic contaminants based on their measured sediment concentrations and sediment organic carbon content. A toxic unit approach (based on final chronic values) is then applied to the calculated porewater concentrations of the individual organics to predict the toxicity of the mixture. The EqP relationships are intended to account for the influence of different sediments on the observed biological effects. As a consequence, the ESBs are causally linked to the specific chemical, applicable across sediments, and are considered protective of benthic organisms.

A full spectrum of forms of carbon may exist in sediments, and the differences in these forms will influence the partitioning of the organics. In recognition of this, a two-carbon model incorporating black carbon along with organic carbon is now available for making EqP-based predictions (US EPA, 2012). The direct measurements of non-ionic organic contaminant concentrations in pore water using passive samplers is increasingly being used to validate the EqP model predictions, calculation of their toxic units, and derivation of site-specific ESBs (Maruya et al., 2009; 2010).

The ESB approach has been used for almost 10 years, with increased use for deriving site-specific ESBs (US EPA, 2012). The ESBs do not consider the antagonistic, additive or synergistic effects of other sediment contaminants in combination with the chemical(s) of potential concern or the potential for bioaccumulation and trophic transfer of chemical(s) of potential concern by organisms.

Currently, the ESB models represent an excellent starting point for considering the potential effects of mixtures of non-ionic organic contaminants, and passive sampling techniques provide a basis for validating predictions. Appendix A2 and A3 provide greater details on the application of ESBs for PAHs, endrin and dieldrin.

### 3.2.2 METALS

The application of the EqP approach to metals is less advanced, and is confounded by the dependence of metal bioavailability on more than one phase in the sediments, and the fact that bioavailability can be ameliorated in the pore waters by complexation with dissolved organic matter.

In anoxic sediments, reactive forms of sulfide described as AVS will regulate the solubility of metals such as cadmium, copper, mercury, nickel, lead, silver and zinc, which form relatively insoluble sulfides (Ankley et al., 1996; USEPA, 2003b; Rickard, and Morse, 2005). The significance of AVS partitioning in controlling metal bioavailability in marine sediments spiked with cadmium was demonstrated by Di Toro et al. (1990, 1992). The key parameter is the difference between AVS and the concentration of the simultaneously extracted metals ( $SEM = \sum Cd, Cu, Ni, Pb, Zn$ ), where both AVS and SEM are operationally-defined respectively as the sulfide and metals liberated from wet sediment by treatment for 30 min with cold 1 M hydrochloric acid. If there is a molar excess of AVS over SEM, then the excess of sulfide will imply no dissolved metals and, therefore, no metal toxicity. If there is no excess of AVS over SEM, then the metals may be present in the pore waters or associated with phases that bind them less strongly and the sediments may be toxic. Based on AVS-SEM theory, ESBs have also been developed for metal mixtures (cadmium, copper, lead, nickel, silver and zinc) (USEPA, 2003a, 2005). Appendix A6 provides greater details of the application of AVS-SEM and ESB approaches for metal mixtures.

Several studies have pointed out limitations to the application of AVS-SEM approach to metals (Simpson et al., 1998, Rickard, and Morse, 2005). The sulfides of Ag, Co, Cu, Hg, and Ni are sparingly soluble in dilute HCl (Simpson et al., 1998; Cooper and Morse, 1998) and so will not appear as AVS, although oxidative release of these metals can occur (Simpson et al., 2000). The tendency may be to overestimate SEM:AVS. They also found examples of metal oxides particles in sediments armoured with sulfide coatings, in which the bioavailability of the metals was minimised by the sulfide coating, yet both oxides and sulfides appeared in the SEM fraction. The reverse may also occur, whereby significant concentrations of AVS are measured, but the AVS is present within particles that are coated with oxidised phases which ultimately control the metal solubility. The latter is more likely to occur near the sediment-water interface (or the wall of organism burrows), where sulfidised particles from deeper in the sediment have been brought into contact with oxygenated overlying water.

Many organisms reside close to the sediment-water interface or create burrows, so the surface sediments with which they are in contact are more oxidized and often contain low AVS concentrations (Naylor et al., 2004; Gallon et al., 2008; De Jonge et al., 2010; 2012; Teuchies et al. 2012). The oxidation of AVS in surface sediments has the potential to increase the bioavailability of both dissolved and particulate metals (Peterson et al., 1996; Eriksson Wiklund and Sundelin, 2002; De Lange et al., 2008; Simpson et al., 2012b). For oxic/sub-oxic sediments, the bioavailability of these metals is strongly influenced by the concentrations of OC, iron and manganese oxyhydroxides and sediment particle size (Besser et al., 2003; Costello et al., 2011; Strom et al., 2011; Campana et al., 2012).

While EqP models have not been developed for oxic sediments, it has recently been demonstrated that toxicity thresholds based on the OC-normalised copper concentration of the <63  $\mu m$  sediment fraction were effective in predicting sub-lethal and lethal effects to a range of benthic organisms (Simpson et al., 2011; Strom et al., 2011; Campana et al., 2012; Campana et al., 2013). This approach is suggested for copper in Appendix A7.

A significant outstanding issue in the development of SQGs for metals in oxidized sediments is the applicability of the SQG approach to a wide suite of metals, as is achieved for Ag, Cd, Cu, Cr, Ni, Pb and Zn with the AVS-SEM and ESB approaches. Costello et al. (2011) showed that the bioavailability of nickel in surface sediments was more strongly influenced by the concentrations of iron and manganese oxides than by OC. The study reinforced the need for SQGs that vary with the metal-binding properties of the sediments, but indicated that there was not yet a universally applicable model. If future models of metal bioavailability are to be

applicable to metal mixtures, then it is likely that the models should explicitly consider pools of AVS, OC and iron and manganese oxides as phases that reduce toxicity.

To validate EqP approaches for metals, the direct measurements of metal concentrations in pore waters is necessary, but this can be challenging due to the influence that small disturbances can have on these concentrations. The DGT technique can potentially provide time-integrated concentrations in pore waters and fluxes of bioavailable metals at the sediment water interface (Tankere-Muller et al., 2006; Simpson et al., 2012). Like passive sampling techniques for organics, the application of DGT is expected to increase, and provide useful information for validating EqP approaches.

### 3.3 Field-based SSD-derived Guidelines

Most forms of SQGs have been derived from effects data generated from laboratory ecotoxicity bioassays, supplemented with ecology data (Long et al., 1995; MacDonald et al., 2000). As discussed above, there are many limitations to these approaches. There have been attempts to derive SQGs from field-based species sensitivity distributions (f-SSD), utilizing field data on benthic communities and contaminant loadings concurrently measured in sediment samples (Leung et al., 2005; Kwok et al., 2008; Hewitt et al., 2009). The f-SSD method can use a quantile regression method to derive SQGs for single contaminant with consideration of the presence of other contaminants and biological interactions. More recently, a field-based community sensitivity distribution (f-CSD) approach has been proposed that utilises an empirical Bayesian method to model the toxicity effect of contaminants on the species density of benthic infauna (Leung et al., 2005). The CSD distribution allows the percentage of species being affected (a drop in species density) to be calculated for a given contaminant concentration and provides a lower confidence limit (Lui et al., 2013).

These new approaches appear particularly useful for the validation of existing guidelines and for the derivation of multiple-stressor site-specific guidelines that better account for the interactions of chemical stressors and natural stressors, e.g. variations in temperature, salinity, dissolved oxygen, and food availability.

The f-SSD approach of Kwok et al. (2008) was applied to sediments from Hong Kong and resulted in threshold values for a range of metals, PAHs and PCBs that fell within the range of current SQGs. This is not the case with measurements of copper, lead and zinc in a New Zealand study by Hewitt et al. (2009), where values were significantly below both the ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000) and the ERL values. The endpoint in these studies is effects on communities rather than toxicity per se and unless there is a distinct concentration gradient, relating the observed effects to specific contaminants remains confounded by co-occurring contaminants, factors that influence contaminant bioavailability, as well as other physical and chemical parameters. Such studies are better included as part of an ecology LOE.

### 3.4 Porewater Guidelines

In some instances pore waters may represent the dominant phase in which a contaminant or naturally forming chemical stressor is found. This may be a consequence of its formation in this phase as a result of chemical and microbiological processes, and/or because of its high aqueous solubility. With respect to naturally forming chemical stressors, ammonia is a case in point, as are nutrients such as nitrate and nitrite. As discussed in Part 1, in such cases it is generally appropriate to apply the WQGs, or equivalent values derived using pore water

toxicity testing with benthic organisms. In the case of porewater ammonia, a WQG of 4 mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  is introduced in these guidelines, based on the data discussed below.

Ammonia is a potentially highly toxic naturally-occurring constituent of sediment pore waters, and is generally not considered a contaminant of concern in the regulation and management of sediments (e.g. dredged material). The toxicity of ammonia is influenced by the temperature and pH of the water and at elevated levels has the potential to confound interpretation of sediment toxicity tests using sensitive species, and influence the distribution of infaunal species measured in ecological impact studies.

Canada has no recommended guideline for ammonia in marine waters (CCREM, 2000). The European Union directive for fresh water has guidance and imperative values of 200 and 1000  $\mu\text{g}$  total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  respectively (EU, 2006). The USEPA have a chronic saltwater criterion of 35  $\mu\text{g}$   $\text{NH}_3\text{/L}$  (equivalent to 760  $\mu\text{g}$  total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  at 20°C and pH 8.0), developed from two saltwater and four freshwater species (USEPA, 1989). Boardman (2004) has suggested that this value be increased by a factor of 2.31 based on the inclusion of his toxicity data for four additional species. All are, however, acute data, converted using acute to chronic ratios.

A review of acute and chronic effects data for marine waters and sediment pore waters by Batley and Simpson (2009) found that it was appropriate to revise the guideline for ammonia and proposed a threshold value for ammonia in sediments. Using species sensitivity distributions, a new trigger value of 460  $\mu\text{g}$  total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  was derived for slightly to moderately disturbed systems (95% protection concentration, PC95), with a value of 160  $\mu\text{g}$  total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  applying to waters of high conservation value (PC99).

Several large data sets are available for ammonia in estuarine and marine sediments that represent background porewater concentrations. A review of porewater ammonia concentrations in 322 estuarine/marine sediments in the United States showed a log-normal distribution of data with a mean concentration of ammonia concentrations (mean  $\pm$  standard deviation) of  $9.0 \pm 15$  mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  (10.9 mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{/L}$ ) for marine sediments excluding dredged material, and  $40.7 \pm 38.9$  mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  (49.4 mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{/L}$ ) for dredged materials only (Sims and Moore, 1995; Moore et al., 1997). Studies from Australian sites show similar results. In 68 sediment samples from 17 locations (4 replicates/location) in Sydney Harbour, measured porewater ammonia concentrations were  $3.7 \pm 2.4$  mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{/L}$ , with a maximum value of 13.6 mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{/L}$  (Chariton et al., 2010a). Despite these observations, in most situations the sediment ecological health appeared to be unaffected by the elevated porewater ammonia concentrations (Chariton et al., 2010a).

In sediments from ship navigation channels, ammonia concentrations can exceed 200 mg  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  (Ankley et al., 1990; Schubauer-Berigan and Ankley, 1991; Stronkhorst, 2003). In general, the pore waters of silty sediments that have high concentrations of organic matter are expected to contain higher concentrations of total ammonia (e.g. 2-20 mg  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$ ), while for sandy sediments with low organic content the concentrations of total ammonia are expected to be lower (e.g.  $<0.5$  mg  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$ ).

The large amount of variability in porewater ammonia data and lack of suitable cause-effect relationships prevents the derivation a risk-based guideline for ammonia. However, to better consider potential degradation of nitrogen cycling reactions that may be occurring due to anthropogenic activities, a WQG of 4 mg total  $\text{NH}_3\text{-N/L}$  is recommended. This value was derived from the 80th percentile of background data from Sydney Harbour.

In whole-sediment toxicity tests, the flux of ammonia from the pore waters can result in significant effects, that in a natural system would be diluted by mixing currents, and requires

additional consideration (see Part 2, Section 4.2.3). A comparison of the toxicity of ammonia in spiked-sediment versus water-only exposures has shown good correspondence between the LC50 values for the infaunal *L. variegatus* and the chironomid *C. tentans*, indicating that ammonia bioavailability and toxicity may be accurately predicted from porewater concentrations for some species (Whiteman et al., 1996). However, the epibenthic *Hyaella azteca* exhibited a behavioural response and apparently avoided the spiked sediments being frequently observed in the overlying waters. Ammonia toxicity tests on New Zealand invertebrate species suggest that they may be among the more sensitive species (Hickey and Vickers, 1994).

For Australian marine organisms used in whole-sediment toxicity tests, EC50 values range from ~20 mg NH<sub>3</sub>-N/L for 10-day lethality to juvenile *M. plumulosa* to >450 mg NH<sub>3</sub>-N/L for 24-h esterase inhibition in the benthic algae, *Entomoneis* cf *punctulata*, (CSIRO unpublished results). For the Australian marine benthic bivalve, *Tellina deltoidalis*, the 10-day whole-sediment LC50 is approximately 67 mg NH<sub>3</sub>-N/L (King et al., 2010). These effects thresholds can be compared to marine amphipods used for toxicity tests in North America (*Ampelisca abdita*, *Rhepoxius abronius*, *Eohaustorius estuarus*, *Grandidierella japonica*, *Leptocheirus plumulosus*) that have 96-h LC50 values for total ammonia ranging from 50 mg NH<sub>3</sub>-N/L (*A. abdita*) to 130 mg NH<sub>3</sub>-N/L (*E. estuaris*) (Kohn et al., 1994; Moore et al. 1997). For porewater toxicity tests using Australia biota, EC50 values are ~10 mg NH<sub>3</sub>-N/L for the chronic 72-h growth rate for the algae *Entomoneis* cf *punctulata* and *Nitzschia closterium* (CSIRO, unpublished results), ~3 mg NH<sub>3</sub>-N/L for 48-h larval development for the oyster *Saccostrea* sp., and 1-h fertilisation of the sea urchin *Heliocidaris tuberculata* (Ecotox Services Pty Ltd, unpublished results).

### 3.5 Guidelines Based on Toxicity Testing

As is done for water quality guidelines, toxicity testing of spiked sediments can be used to generate SQG trigger values. The success of this approach depends on the number of test species used. In the European Union's Water Framework Directive recommendations for sediment quality standard derivation (EU WFD, 2010), one option is the use of long-term whole sediment laboratory toxicity tests with sediment organisms and spiked field sediments. Assessment factors are applied to the tests as follows: for 1 long-term test (EC10 or NOEC), divide by a factor of 100; for two long-term tests with species representing different living and feeding conditions, divide by 50, and for three such tests, divide by 10. A factor of 1000 is used for short-term tests. Again, as noted for water quality guidelines, the use of assessment factors is not the preferred approach, with the application of species sensitivity distributions (SSDs) to datasets containing At least seven species from four taxonomic groups recommended. In the case of sediments, however, it was recognised that these minimum data requirements will rarely be met.

One successful application of SSDs to SQG derivation is the case of copper, as discussed in Appendix A7. This is a more generic approach taken into account sediment particle size and chemical composition. Site-specific guideline derivation based on the spiking of field sediments, could be quite an expensive exercise.



## 3.6 Approaches to SQGs in the EU and Norway

### 3.6.1 EU GUIDELINES

After a prolonged consideration, the European Union (EU) as part of its Water Framework Directive has recently provided technical guidance for the derivation of sediment quality guidelines (standards in the EU) (EU WFD, 2010). This encompasses all of the methods that have been discussed above. The recommendations suggest that the following are suitable for deriving the sediment quality standards ( $QS_{\text{sediment}}$ ):

- (i) ecotoxicity data from experiments with benthic organisms
- (ii) water column ecotoxicity data used with equilibrium partitioning
- (iii) empirical field or mesocosm data.

Unless a large number of tests undertaken, guidelines based on spiked sediment toxicity testing (Section 3.5) are likely to be highly conservative. Equilibrium partitioning requires some knowledge of the sediment:water partitioning coefficient, which, as already noted, will be problematic for metals, and marginally more reliable organics. The EU document acknowledges the uncertainty in uptake pathways when  $\log K_{ow} > 5$  by dividing any such derived  $QS_{\text{sediment}}$  value by 10.

The empirical field data refer to ERLs and TELs, and other empirical derivations, as well as the use of field-based SSDs. Their acceptability is qualified by the following:

1. If the TEL or ERL or mesocosm NOEC/EC10 is higher than or equal to the quality standard derived from available ecotoxicity data, either the latter is used as the  $QS_{\text{sediment}}$ , or there may be a case for reducing the size of the application factor applied to the laboratory data, but only if the field or mesocosm data are reliable.
2. If the TEL or ERL is lower than the  $QS_{\text{sediment}}$ , derived based on ecotoxicity tests, there might be case for increasing the size of the application factor if the field or mesocosm data are reliable.
3. If the TEL or ERL is higher than or equal to the value calculated by applying equilibrium partitioning, the latter is used to the derivation of the  $QS_{\text{sediment}}$ .
4. If the TEL or ERL is lower than the value calculated by applying equilibrium partitioning, the former value is used with an assessment factor to derive the  $QS_{\text{sediment}}$ . This factor would be set at five.

More specific details are provided on the bioavailability issues, background concentrations and dealing with substances that bioaccumulate or biomagnify.

### 3.6.2 NORWEGIAN GUIDELINES

One of the more different approaches to SQG derivation was that adopted by Norwegian authorities (SFT, 2007; Bakke et al., 2010). Their 1997 guidelines had been based not on biological effects, but on intervals of excesses of concentrations over background concentrations. Those guidelines considered 5 levels of contamination determined from frequency distributions of selected contaminants in the field, including for mercury and dioxins, a consideration of health as well as environmental effects. In updating this in 2007, they largely followed the approaches being developed by the EU Water Framework Directive

(EU WFD, 2010), but retaining the five classes of contamination, background, good, moderate, bad and very bad. The boundaries between these classes now represented respectively, the upper limit of background concentrations, the predicted no effects concentration for chronic exposure  $PNEC_{chronic}$ , the PNEC for acute exposure, and 2-10 times the acute PNEC. Where a sediment quality standard has been proposed in the European Union Water Framework Directive, it was used instead of the  $PNEC_{chronic}$ .

The Norwegian approach goes further than ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000) in identifying more than two levels of protection for sediments in the way that ANZECC/ARMCANZ does for waters. Multiple levels of protection can also be derived from any SSD-based guideline derivation, such as that of Kwok et al. (2008).

### 3.7 Reliability of the Australian and New Zealand Effects-based Guidelines

The effects-based guidelines that were adopted in 2000 for Australia and New Zealand were primarily derived from the effects range-low (ERL) and effects-range median (ERM) values from Long et al. (1995) and were based on a single large biological effects dataset of North American sediment data with appropriate rounding off in keeping with their precision. They also included some metal guidelines adopted for Hong Kong (Chapman et al., 1999). In this revision, the guideline values for metals and metalloids are unchanged, however the values for organics now mostly correspond to the threshold effects levels (TEL) and probable effect levels (PEL) derived by MacDonald et al. (1996). For some of the contaminants (e.g. PAHs, TPHs, TBT), revised or new values have been provided based on improved effects data and guideline derivation approaches (see Appendix).

Concerns continue to be expressed for the reliability of particular guideline values, however, it is important to recognise that as multiple stressors will be present in most sediments, and organisms will have the varying responses to different stressors, that the guidelines will never provide an ability to predict when ecotoxicological effects will occur. The purpose of the SQGVs is to act as a guide to when effects will not occur in any sediments, and the upper guideline values as a guide to when effects may become more likely to occur.

In this context, it is important to consider the methods of derivation of the guidelines (see Section 3.1). It has been commented that agreement within a factor of three between freshwater and marine guidelines is considered good (Smith et al., 1996) and that might reflect one view of the uncertainty. We know that because the empirical guidelines were derived from a ranking of toxicity and other effects data, and because contaminants typically co-occur (e.g. metals and organics), then any toxicity was equally attributed to all components of the mixture. For example, toxicity may be due to high concentrations of PAHs in a sediment, but the toxicity is equally ascribed to say cadmium, which may be present but at concentrations that were not causing effects. The cadmium guideline then becomes overly conservative. For sediments where the toxicity is truly a result of the cumulative effects of multiple contaminants, e.g. from PAHs, cadmium and other contaminants in combination, the approach is more appropriate, but the individual guidelines derived still remain quite conservative.

Further, it is recognised that the database is largely derived from acute toxicity effects, albeit to sensitive species. As newer tests evolve with chronic endpoints, it is clear that effects will be seen at lower concentrations. Until a wide range of single species chronic guidelines are

developed, we will be unable to reliably define 'safe' concentrations for individual contaminants in sediments with respect to longer-term chronic effects.

For the most part, the concern will be for defining potential impacts when the defined trigger values are exceeded, and this will cover the uncertainties with conservative guidelines, co-occurrence and mixture toxicity. Where there is a concern that the trigger value is not sufficiently conservative, it is here that a manager might request more detailed investigations using other LOEs. Note that it has always been recognised that chemical assessment is but one LOE, although it is the common starting point. When other LOEs might suggest that effects may be occurring, where the chemistry does not, and this is the opportunity for the WOE approach to provide the solution.

In other cases, there have been concerns that the guideline SQGVs are not sufficiently protective. This has largely been observed in attempts to link contaminant concentrations to ecological effects in field studies in New Zealand (Hewitt et al., 2009). WOE studies would also be useful in such cases to try and deconvolute the effects of multiple stressors. More research is required, however, before f-SSDs from such studies can be reliably used to derive site specific guidelines.

### 3.7.1 LEVELS OF PROTECTION

As already noted, the SQGVs effectively only consider one level of protection, based on the 10th percentile of effects data. These SQGVs, if exceeded, are triggers for further investigation. There will, however, be instances in which the sediments might require a lesser level of protection. For example, sediments in a dockyard or marine environment would clearly be classified as highly disturbed, and while ever this usage remained, the likelihood of a pristine or even a slightly-to-moderately disturbed environment being achieved in these locations would be remote. In such instances, the upper guideline, SQG-High, might be a more reasonable concentration limit. In instances where large datasets for either toxicity or ecology have been accumulated, the delineation of 95th, 90th, and 80th percentiles from SSDs, would provide values for additional levels of protection. However, while large error bars and areas of uncertainty remain with the derived guidelines, attempting to delineate these cannot be justified.

## 3.8 Guidelines for the Ocean Disposal of Dredged Sediments

The Australian National Assessment Guidelines for Dredging (NAGD, 2009) have recently been released, replacing the National Ocean Guidelines for Dredged Material released in 2002. The document outlines methods for sediment sampling and analysis, sediment quality assessment and biological testing. The guideline values are identical to those proposed in this document, with the lower and upper guideline values being referred to as Screening and High Levels respectively.

The sediment quality assessment procedure used in the ocean disposal guidelines is as follows:

- (i) Where data were available to establish the regional concentrations in the sediments of the receiving area, the mean value of such concentrations was used as the background level for naturally occurring substances. A lower (reference) screening level is developed by multiplying the background level by two to account for sampling and analytical variability and the range of natural values in the area. Where background data were not available, the screening values were used.

Dumping is permitted where the mean of all contaminants to be dredged is below the Screening Level. It is likely that where clay/silt sediment is being dumped on sand that even uncontaminated sediment would fail the twice background criteria, and then the Screening Guidelines are applied.

- (ii) Where the mean concentration of one or more contaminants is between the Screening and High Levels, further assessment is required including the determination of acute sediment toxicity on suitable test organisms. Where one or more contaminants is above the High Level, the sediment is unsuitable for disposal at sea, although this may be justified if the results of further sediment bioassays, including an evaluation of sub-lethal toxicity and bioaccumulation, show that the material is non-toxic.

The Screening Level values are considered to be tentative and are to be revised as international criteria are updated, and/or Australian criteria are developed. The value for radionuclides is the maximum specified by Australian ocean dumping legislation. For organochlorine pesticides where reliable detection levels are close to screening levels, it was recommended that a case-by-case assessment be made.

Sediment toxicity testing using protocols such as those developed in Australia (Simpson et al., 2005) or used in the US (USEPA, 1994) were considered to be the most appropriate for predicting the bioavailability, toxicity and bioaccumulation potential of contaminants in sediments.

Elutriate testing (USEPA, 1994) was used to determine the water quality impacts of disposal. Using a 1:4 dilution and a four-hour mixing, the results are appraised against ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000) marine water quality guidelines, taking into account appropriate dilution factors.

The NAGD (2009) have slightly different objectives to the ANZECC/ARMCANZ SQGs since they are considering the impact on biota both during ocean disposal and transport through the water column and on their deposition on the sea floor. In the latter case, the same guidelines will apply, whereas the release during mixing with seawater will be estimated by elutriate test data judged against water quality guidelines. The NAGD guidelines follow a similar WOE approach.

## 4. Sediment Quality Assessment

### 4.1 Sediment Chemistry and Bioavailability Testing

The assessment of sediment chemistry, involves the measurement of total contaminant concentrations, together with supporting information on modifying factors such as TOC, AVS, grain size, as already discussed in Part 1. The initial screening for COPCs is made on the <2 mm sediment fraction to exclude low surface area materials such as coarse minerals, shell and wood debris, that bind limited amounts of contaminants. As noted earlier, the <63 µm sediment fraction is mostly readily resuspended or potentially ingested by organisms, and assessment of the concentrations and bioavailability of contaminants associated with this fine sediment fraction can be considered when more detailed investigations of contaminant bioavailability are required.

It is possible for the total concentrations of particular contaminants to exceed their respective SQGVs and even the SQG-high values, but no toxic effects can be observed, because not all of the contaminants are in bioavailable forms (Simpson and Batley, 2007; SERDP/ESTCP, 2008; Ahlf et al., 2009; Maruya et al., 2010; Burgess et al., 2013).

The bioavailability of metals in sediments is complex and influenced strongly by:

- (i) speciation (e.g. metal binding with particulate sulfide, organic carbon, and iron hydroxide phases, pH and redox potential),
- (ii) sediment-water partitioning relationships,
- (iii) organism physiology (uptake rates from waters, assimilation efficiencies from particulates), and
- (iv) organism feeding and other behaviour (feeding selectivity, burrow irrigation) (Luoma and Rainbow, 2005; Simpson and Batley, 2007).

The bioavailability of hydrophobic organic contaminants (HOCs) (e.g. polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)) is also affected by organism physiology and sediment characteristics (Moore et al., 2005; Cornelissen et al., 2005; Qui and Davis, 2004). The bioavailability of HOCs is complicated by the large range of different types of particulate organic carbon (OC) phases to which HOCs may bind (e.g. black carbon), the concentrations of these OC phases, and the properties of the HOCs that determine their binding strength and desorption rates.

In the case of PAHs, if the source is petroleum, the potency will be strongly influenced by the alkylated compounds and an assessment that only analyses the parent PAHs may grossly underestimate the overall potency of the mixture (USEPA, 2003d; Hawthorne et al., 2006; Driscoll and Burgess, 2007). Consequently, it is recommended that 34 PAHs are measured, including 18 parent PAHs and 16 C1 to C4 alkyl PAH derivatives (see Appendix A2.1, USEPA, 2003a).

The use of bioavailability tests in sediment quality assessment can be used to modify SQGVs for specific COPCs or to provide additional information on cause-effect relationships.

#### 4.1.1 BIOAVAILABILITY TESTS TO MODIFY SQGVS

##### Mineralised forms of metals

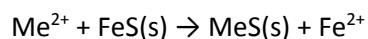
Mineralised forms of metals are not considered bioavailable as they do not easily dissolve in the water or during the passage through organism guts. The comparison of concentrations of total metal concentrations and dilute acid-extractable metals provides information on the extent to which the metals are mineralised.

Total particulate metals (TPM) analyses are usually analysed using microwave-assisted digestion using a mixture of nitric, hydrofluoric and hydrochloric acids (or combinations). For most metals, the most reactive and bioavailable fraction (i.e. the metal fraction of interest in sediment quality assessments) are those that can be easily extracted with cold dilute acid. Weakly extractable, dilute-acid extractable metals (AEM) are determined by reacting the sediment (1-10 g/L) with cold 1 M hydrochloric acid for 30 min (although variations on the HCl concentration 0.5-2 M and time 0.5-1 h have also been used). The use of higher acid molarities (e.g. 6 M HCl) will result in metal extractabilities that are more similar to TPM and this will reduce the benefits of the AEM measurement for assessing metal bioavailability (Simpson and Batley, 2007). The 1 M HCl extraction is analogous to the extraction of metals used in the SEM (simultaneously extractable metals) analysis and aids comparison of results between sites USEPA, 2003b).

For metals such as Ag, Cu and Hg, that are recognised as being sparingly soluble in dilute HCl (Simpson et al., 1998; Cooper and Morse, 1998), a combination of AEM and TPM measurements may be necessary to accurately describe the forms and potential bioavailability. For example, metal sulfide phases or metals associated with organic polymers (e.g. antifouling paints, tyre rubber) may change over time, and the measurement of TPM allows the potential future transformations of these metals into more bioavailable forms to be adequately considered (Turner and Hallett, 2012; Simpson et al., 2013). Furthermore, the potential contribution of metals associated with fine sediments to dietary effects in benthic organisms that ingest sediments is not yet fully understood (Simpson and Batley, 2007).

##### Acid-volatile sulfide (AVS) and simultaneously extracted metals (SEM)

As already discussed, the AVS content of a sediment is a key modifier of the bioavailability of several metals (USEPA, 2003b; Simpson and Batley, 2007). Trace metals in sediments are generally believed to react with FeS (the major component of AVS) to form metal sulfides according to:



In general, appreciable concentrations of Ag, Cd, Co, Cu, Hg, Ni, Pb and Zn are not expected to be observed in pore waters until the reservoir of FeS is exhausted. Measurement of AVS concentrations (mmol/kg) and comparison against the molar sum of acid-soluble metals (often termed simultaneously extracted metals or SEM, mmol/kg) is a useful indicator of the bioavailability of metals in sediments. If AVS is greater than SEM, the metals are likely to be bound in sulfide complexes with greatly limited bioavailability. However, if AVS < SEM, metals may or may not be toxic due to other controlling factors (e.g., TOC, iron hydroxides).

AVS is operationally defined as the fraction of sulfides extracted from sediments by cold dilute HCl (usually 0.5-1 M HCl for 0.5 to 1 h) (Simpson et al., 2005). Iron and manganese monosulfides constitute the majority of the sulfide extracted by AVS methods. SEM is calculated as  $\sum(\text{Ag,Cd,Cu,Ni,Pb,Zn})$  in mmol/kg. The differential approach (SEM-AVS) is the

preferred representation of results, rather than the more traditional ratio approach (SEM/AVS), which tends to misrepresent available concentrations of SEM at low AVS concentrations.

In evaluating AVS, it is obviously important to specifically consider surficial sediments where AVS concentrations will be lower, as well as analysing deeper sediments, rather than a pooled sample over a range of depths. Seasonal changes can also influence the AVS-SEM relationship.

The application of AVS-SEM measurements to modify SQGVs is described in the Appendix A6.

### Other modifying factors

The pH and redox potential of the sediments may also significantly influence metal speciation. For example, in sediment having a low redox potential, iron and manganese oxyhydroxide (e.g. FeOOH, MnO<sub>2</sub>) phases may reductively dissolve to form Fe(II) and Mn(II) resulting in the release of metals which were adsorbed to these phases. At lower redox potentials, AVS will begin to form and chromium if present in pore waters should be in the form of Cr(III), rather than the more toxic Cr(VI) form. Despite this knowledge, pH and redox potential measurements cannot be used to accurately predict metal partitioning or bioavailability and their use alone is not recommended for sediment quality assessments. It is recommended that pH and redox potential be recorded to assist in the evaluation of factors influencing the toxicity of the sediments.

## 4.1.2 ADDITIONAL BIOAVAILABILITY TESTS

### Porewater contaminants

Contaminants in dissolved forms are considered to be more bioavailable than those associated with solids. Consequently, direct measurement of COPCs in sediment-associated waters, including pore water, burrow water and overlying water, can provide valuable information for assessments. Because many benthic organisms are in direct contact with sediment-associated waters, they can be considered to be a major exposure pathway for benthic organisms. The concentrations of contaminants in the pore waters of surface sediments (0-1 mm) will control the flux of contaminants to the overlying waters or into the burrows of organisms. For sediments where pore waters cannot be easily extracted, sediment elutriates prepared by shaking sediments with water will often provide a useful surrogate for pore waters.

Concentrations of COPCs in sediment-associated waters should be compared to WQG concentrations unless effects data are available for sediment-associated waters (e.g. copper).

### Hydrophobic organic contaminants (HOCs)

Traditionally the bioavailability of sediment-bound HOCs has been determined using field-collected organisms or bioaccumulation assays of 2-6 week test duration (Moore et al., 2005). Measurement of the bioavailable fraction of HOCs in sediments may also be undertaken using passive samplers and biomimetic methods designed to mimic the uptake and accumulation of organic contaminants from both water and sediment phases. Passive sampling techniques have developed considerably recently and the use of semi-permeable membrane devices (SPMDs), polyethylene devices (PEDs), solid phase microextraction (SPME), polyoxymethylene (POM) samplers, and Tenax desorption techniques and gut fluid mimics (MacRae and Hall, 1998; Leppänen and Kukkonen, 2000; Cornelissen et al., 2001; Vinturella et al., 2004; Qiu and Davis, 2004; Maruya et al., 2010; Ding et al., 2012; Mackenbach et al., 2012; USEPA, 2012). Biomimetic approaches include gut fluid mimics (MacRae and Hall, 1998; Voparil and Mayer,



2004), and while these are not substitutes for organisms, they provide complementary or preliminary information for toxicity testing, e.g. allowing a more efficient use of biota and a more refined understanding of toxicant exposure. The advantages and disadvantages of biomimetic devices have been discussed by Moore et al. (2005).

Hydrophobic organic contaminants are generally much more strongly associated with (partitioned to) black carbon (pyrogenic carbon, soot, coal particles) than other forms of natural organic matter (Koelmans et al., 2006). Relationships between toxic effects of HOCs and sediment organic carbon concentrations, organic carbon forms (e.g. black carbon) and sediment particle size may improve concentration-response relationships (Simpson et al., 2007).

Combined organic carbon and black-carbon-normalised EqP models that use Freundlich isotherms for the combined adsorption behaviour (Accardi-Dey and Gschwend, 2002, 2003; Qui and Davis, 2004; Koelmans et al., 2006) may be used where sufficient information on the speciation of carbon is available (USEPA, 2012).

#### **4.1.3 EXAMPLES OF THE CHEMISTRY LOE**

Examples of the chemistry LOE scoring are provided in Table 5, using both sediment and porewater data. The sediment measures include chemistry-based measures of bioavailability modifiers. Similar bioavailability considerations could also be applied to porewater analyses. The examples shown are representative of real cases. In case C1, a single (class of) contaminants has a score of 3 and the WQGs are considered quite robust. In case C5, a single contaminant is driving the score of 3 and given the uncertainties of the GVs, this score is not as strong as one in which there are other contaminants exceeding GVs. In case C7, the fact that acid-extractable metals (AEM) are below GVs makes that score at best 2, which is considered conservative. In case 8, the fact that there is a molar excess of AVS compared to SEM (equivalent to AEM) offers protection against effects, but does not completely eliminate possible effects from metal sulfide oxidation or dietary exposure so the score is 2.

## **4.2 Sediment Toxicity Testing**

The evaluation of sediment toxicity through laboratory or field bioassays is an important LOE for assessments. The toxicity tests are designed to determine whether the whole sediment, or sediment-associated water in the case of pore water tests, may cause toxic effects to individual species of biota (ASTM, 2003; Carr, 1998; Environment Canada, 1998; Simpson et al., 2005; USEPA, 1994).

The exposure route to sediment contaminants for other benthic organisms has been assumed to principally involve pore waters, but it is now recognised that the ingestion of sediment particles and dermal exposure can also be important exposure mechanisms. Benthic biota can include surface-dwelling filter feeders (mussels, oysters) and grazers (amphipods, harpacticoid copepods, snails, shrimps), burrowing organisms that may filter feed and/or deposit feed (amphipods, bivalves, crabs, polychaete worms, and shrimps). In addition, there are organisms living in intimate contact with the sediment, such as benthic algae or rooted plants that are incapable of ingesting particulate materials. The assessment of toxicity should include organisms with a range of behaviours.



#### 4.2.1 TOXICITY TEST SPECIES

The toxicity test procedure used can have a major influence on the outcome of LOE score for ecotoxicology. No one organism is best suited for all sediments and generally, a range of organisms, having differing exposure pathways and test endpoints (e.g. survival, growth, reproduction) should be used for ecotoxicological assessment of contaminated sediments. Different benthic species have different sensitivities to different toxicants. It is therefore important in sediment quality assessments to use a suite of tests with organisms having different feeding strategies and behaviours, to cover all potential routes of exposure.

Whole-sediment toxicity tests use sediment-dwelling organisms or biota that live in close association with the sediments should be used in preference to toxicity tests on sediment-associated waters that have been isolated from sediments (e.g. pore water, elutriates). In general, elutriate tests are not preferred, except for assessing the release of contaminants from dredged sediments as part of the assessment process of sediments for ocean disposal. Solvent extracts of sediments are also not recommended due to their lack of environmental relevance. Porewater chemistry can change rapidly following extraction from the sediment, and particularly important is the loss of contaminants through adsorption to containers or volatilisation. In addition, many benthic species ingest sediments and this dietary route of exposure to contaminants is not measured in porewater tests.

Simpson et al. (2005) discussed a variety of pore water and whole-sediment toxicity tests, however, a range of more robust sub-lethal tests have since been developed using Australian species (Mann et al., 2009; 2010; Ward et al., 2011; Perez-Landa and Simpson, 2011). In summary, it is now possible to routinely undertake sub-lethal whole-sediment toxicity tests using benthic alga, benthic copepods, and epibenthic amphipods, and acute lethality tests with benthic copepod, amphipod, bivalve and polychaete worm species. Apart from algae, that live at the sediment-water interface and are exposed to dissolved contaminants, most benthic organisms have dissolved and sediment ingestion contaminant exposure routes, although the relative importance of the exposure pathways will vary between tests species. Juvenile life stages are more sensitive than adult life stages. Sub-lethal, partial life-cycle toxicity tests (10 days) are now available for whole-sediment that utilise the amphipod, *Melita plumulosa* (Mann et al., 2009) and the benthic copepod, *Nitocra spinipes* (Perez-Landa and Simpson, 2010). For *M. plumulosa*, full lifecycle chronic tests were initially developed for *M. plumulosa* (Gale et al., 2006), but due to the duration and labour required to perform, they are not useful for most assessments. The partial life-cycle toxicity tests consider ovarian to embryo development in *M. plumulosa*, and reproductive output of the copepod *N. spinipes* following exposure to undiluted test sediments and can provide useful results for 10-day exposures. Both species are amenable to testing for the effects of contaminants in a full spectrum of sediment types (sand to silt, high to low organic carbon) and are proving to be robust organisms for assessing sediment toxicity. For both tests, sub-lethal effects were consistently observed when sediment contaminant concentrations exceeded SQG concentrations (Simpson and Spadaro, 2011; Campana et al., 2012). Variations in sediment particle size and organic carbon content did not affect endpoint variability, which was typically less than 10% (standard error).

A 10-day whole-sediment acute toxicity test using juveniles of the epibenthic amphipod species, *Melita plumulosa*, is currently the most robust acute test available in Australia (King et al., 2006a,b; Simpson et al., 2005; Spadaro et al., 2008). Of six amphipods (endemic to Australia) evaluated as possible species for use in whole-sediment toxicity tests, *M. plumulosa* was the most sensitive to contaminants and has the advantage of being easily cultured in the

laboratory. The tube-dwelling amphipod, *Corophium colo*, also used for whole-sediment toxicity tests, was significantly less sensitive to contaminants. Research has shown that *M. plumulosa* ingest significant amounts of sediment while feeding and therefore are exposed to contaminants from both dissolved and sediment pathways (King et al., 2005, 2006a). For *M. plumulosa*, 7-day old juveniles are approximately three times more sensitive than adults (CSIRO, unpublished results).

Of the other species currently used in Australia for whole-sediment toxicity tests, the benthic marine microalga, *Entomoneis cf punctulata*, is the most thoroughly developed and utilised (Adams and Stauber, 2004; Simpson et al., 2007). The test endpoint is based on 24-h inhibition of esterase activity within the algae, and while it can be criticised for being a 'biomarker' response rather than a toxicity endpoint, good concentration-response relationships are achieved for the assessment of hydrocarbon-contaminated sediments (Simpson et al., 2007). Whole-sediment acute toxicity test methods have been developed that use Australian bivalves (*Tellina deltoidalis*) and polychaete worm (*Australonereis ehlersi*) species (King et al., 2004), and other amphipods (*Corophium minor*), but they are not considered as robust as the tests using *M. plumulosa*.

Increased numbers of false-positives (toxic effect due to non-contaminant stressors or test artefacts) are often encountered (and expected) when moving from acute lethality endpoints to chronic test endpoints. For this reason, in many assessments more useful information may be obtained by undertaking a greater number of acute lethality tests using robust methods, than undertaking fewer chronic tests.

The number of available tests continues to grow, and these can be followed through the literature or through local experts.

Table 5. Line-of-evidence decision matrix examples for chemical assessment <sup>a</sup>

Case	Assessment based on SQGVs			Assessment based on WQGs			LOE Score	Explanation
	1	2 (COPC)	Modifier	3 (COC)	1	2 (COPC)	3 (COC)	
C1	1						OCs	SQGV not exceeded; WQG exceeded (>HC10) for OCs. (sandy sediments not binding high OCs)
C2		Cr, OCs/OPs					TPHs	SQGV exceeded (<SQG-high) for Cr, OCs; WQG exceeded (>HC10) for TPHs (oils).
C3		Cr, Pb, Zn PAHs		Cu	1			3 SQGV exceeded (<SQG-high) for Cd, Cr, Pb, Zn, PAHs; SQGV>SQG-high for Cu.
C4		As, TPHs					As	3 SQGV exceeded (<SQG-high) for As, TBT; WQG exceeded (>HC10) for As.
C5				Dieldrin	1			3 SQGV exceeded (>SQG-high) for dieldrin.
C6		Ag, Cd, Ni, Hg, Pb, Zn	SEM-AVS <0					2 SQGV exceeded (<SQG-high) for Ag, Cd, Hg, Ni, Pb and Zn, <b>but</b> bioavailability tests using SEM-AVS method indicate that these metals are of low bioavailability.
C7		2 (3)	AEM low, mineralised	Ag, Cr, Hg, Ni, Pb, Zn				2 SQGV exceeded (>SQG-high) for Ag, Cr, Hg, Ni, Pb and Zn, <b>but</b> bioavailability tests measuring AEM show that the metals are mineralised and not bioavailable. SQGV score changed from 3 to 2.
C8		PCBs, PAHs	Biomimetic tests					2 SQGV exceeded (<SQG-high) for PCBs and PAHs, <b>but</b> bioavailability tests using SPMDs show that the PCBs and PAHs are not bioavailable.
C9		Pb, Zn, PAHs				Zn		2 SQGV exceeded (<SQG-high) for Zn, PAHs; WQG exceeded (>HC5) for Zn.
C10		Cr, Cu, V, TBT				Cu		2 SQGV exceeded (<SQG-high) for Cr, Cu, V, TBT; WQG exceeded (>HC5) for Cu.
C11		PAHs, Zn			1			2 SQGV exceeded (<SQG-high) for Zn, PAHs.
C12		TBT, OCs			1			2 TBT sediment TC>SQGV<SQG-high
C13	1				1			1 No SQGVs exceeded. No COPCs or COCs identified.

<sup>a</sup> LOE-Scores for SQGVs and COPCs and COCs listed; PAHs = polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons; OCs/OPs = organochlorine/organophosphate pesticides; PCBs = polychlorinated biphenyls; TPHs = total petroleum hydrocarbons; TBT = tributyltin; AVS = acid-volatile sulfide; SEM = simultaneously extractable metals sum:  $\Sigma(\text{Ag, Cd, Cu, Ni, Pb, Zn})$ ; AEM = acid-extractable metals by cold 1 M HCl; not all possible LOEs or cases included.

#### **4.2.2 TEST SEDIMENTS**

The type of sediment collected for toxicity testing depends on the study aims. For most monitoring and toxicity assessment studies where historical contamination is not an issue, the upper 0-10 cm of sediment is generally the sediment fraction of interest. For studies where the oxic/sub-oxic layer is well defined a smaller depth, e.g. 0-3 cm might be more appropriate. Oxic sediments are appropriate for toxicity testing as most sediment infauna will reside in the top oxic layer or irrigate their burrows with oxygenated overlying water.

The integrity of the test sample may have a significant influence on the test outcomes and the suitability of methods for collection, manipulation and storage (ASTM, 2000; Environment Canada, 1994; USEPA, 2001; Simpson et al., 2005). It is recommended that toxicity tests be undertaken as soon as practical after collection of sediments from the field. Storage of sediments for periods greater than eight weeks before testing is not recommended (Casado-Martinez et al., 2006; USEPA/USACE, 1998; Geffard et al., 2004).

Any form of disturbance to the sediments, whether through the act of sampling, field processing or transportation, will affect the bioavailability of the contaminants (Simpson et al., 2005; USEPA, 2001). Although disturbances to the sediments cannot be eliminated, it is important that they are minimised. Following collection, sediment samples for toxicity tests should be stored cold (on ice) to reduce loss of volatiles and decrease bacterial activity, and stored refrigerated until the time of testing. It is desirable to undertake some assessment of how sample manipulation may affect the concentrations (e.g. loss of volatiles), bioavailability (e.g. changes to AVS, partitioning in pore waters) and toxicity of contaminants in the collected sediments.

Measurements of non-contaminant stressors such as ammonia and sulfide should be made as soon as possible after sample collection and also monitored during toxicity tests so their effects on test outcomes can be quantified and concentration compared to what was present in the sediments *in situ*.

Many toxicity tests will require several weeks to prepare the test organisms before test can commence, then 1-2 weeks to perform and potentially another week to analyse and report the data. Consequently, the costs associated with toxicity tests will often be high and the collection of test samples for larger risk assessment projects may need to be staggered so that sufficient time is available for undertaking these tests.

#### **4.2.3 DATA ANALYSIS AND INTERPRETATION**

Quality assurance, including criteria for test validity, consideration of control or reference sediments, replicates and reference toxicants, is important when considering the significance of the test results (Environment Canada, 1994; ASTM, 2003; Simpson et al., 2005).

The data analysis and quality assurance procedures should be sufficient to determine if these effects are significantly different from those occurring in the controls or reference sediments (USEPA, 1994). It is important to ensure that the tolerable range of the test organism to physicochemical characteristics of the test sediments, pore waters and overlying waters, such as DO, pH, salinity, particle size, ammonia and sulfide, are not exceeded.

Different criteria can be used to determine whether or not the test sediment is toxic. For most acute lethality tests, the use of pass/fail criteria based on mortality being significantly different

and exceeding that of the reference sediment by more than 20% (Environment Canada, 1998; Simpson et al., 2005)

Sediments may have 'natural' toxicity due to the presence of ammonia or hydrogen sulfide, decomposition products of organics in aerobic and anoxic sediments respectively. Ammonia was found to have a probability of up to 18% of being the only cause of toxicity in a series of 322 marine sediments in the eastern USA (Moore et al., 1997). The presence of ammonia may therefore confound interpretation of results and determining the risk associated with contaminants. In situations where ammonia concentrations are high and suspected of cause the observed toxicity, additional tests may be required to quantify the influence of ammonia. When high ammonia concentrations are measured in overlying waters during whole-sediment toxicity tests, it is recommended that the water is renewed regularly to reflect dilution of ammonia with overlying water that would occur naturally in the field.

There are a number of other factors that affect test organism response aside from those related to sediment-associated contaminants. They include effects of sediment heterogeneity, sediment manipulations, temperature, light, food availability (sediment nutrition) and organism mobility. These factors may result in significant toxicity (negative effects relative to control responses) when contamination is low, greater toxicity than expected, or no (or less) observed toxicity when contaminants are present at concentrations expected to cause great toxicity.

Photo-induced toxicity has been observed to be an important factor in controlling the toxicity of some contaminants associated with sediment (e.g. certain PAHs). The light conditions used during tests may need to reflect lighting conditions at the field site (e.g. at a certain water depth or sun exposure on a mud flat) (Ankley et al., 1994; Swartz et al., 1997).

#### **4.2.4 WEIGHTING OF TOXICITY TESTS FOR LOE SCORING**

It is recommended that three or more toxicity tests, using different species, are evaluated to determine the final LOE Score for toxicity. It is recommended that at least one, and preferably 2 or 3, of these tests is a sub-lethal whole-sediment toxicity test, and at least one test should have a chronic test endpoint. The relevance, sensitivity to the suspected COPCs, reliability (lower numbers of false positives or false negatives), and applicability to the sediment types or assessment environment will be different for every test. Consequently, some best-professional judgment may be necessary to determine the final LOE score when the toxicity results are believed to be influenced by stressors that are not sediment-associated contaminants.

#### **4.2.5 IDENTIFICATION OF TOXICANTS IN SEDIMENTS**

Procedures exist for the identification of the cause of toxicity observed in pore water and whole-sediment toxicity tests. Toxicity identification and evaluation (TIE) procedures, as they are commonly referred, involve the manipulation of sediments, or sediment components (e.g. pore waters) to remove or mask the effects of particular classes of contaminants (e.g. PAHs, metals, ammonia), thus allowing identification of the chemical class(es) responsible for the observed toxicity (Ankley and Schubauer-Berigan, 1995; Ho et al., 2002; Simpson et al., 2007; USEPA, 2007). The TIE methods for whole sediments generally target the three main toxicant classes in sediments: metals, organics and ammonia (USEPA, 2007). Manipulations include the addition of the green macroalga *Ulva lactuca* and zeolite resins to remove ammonia, cation exchange resins to sequester metals, and powdered coconut charcoal to sorb organics. The

use of knowledge of contaminant exposure pathways (pore waters, whole sediments) (Simpson and King, 2005), species-specific sensitivity to selected contaminants is also useful for identifying which contaminants or stressors may be responsible for the observed toxicity (Simpson and Batley, 2007).

#### **4.2.6 IN SITU TESTING**

Laboratory-based effects assessments may sometimes be poor measures of field-based exposures (Chappie and Burton, 2000; Burton et al., 2005). This occurs because exposure dynamics and interactions occurring at the field site, including the heterogeneity of natural sediments, cannot be correctly mimicked in the laboratory.

*In situ* tests may be defined as environmental measurements that are taken in the field, without removal of a sample to the laboratory to minimise manipulation (Baird et al., 2007; Crane et al., 2007). *In situ* effects measures may more accurately represent the effects occurring to single organisms or populations in the field. Currently few routine *in situ* test procedures exist in Australia (Pettigrove and Hoffman, 2005). This is due both to the lack of research into these methods and some difficulties associated with logistics associated with placement and retrieval of *in situ* chambers) and integrity during placement (e.g. vandalism, high energy sites) (Liber et al., 2007). The incorporation of results from *in situ* tests in the WOE decision-making process is desirable, especially as standardised techniques may become available in the future (ASTM, 2001; Chappie and Burton, 2000).

#### **4.2.7 EXAMPLES OF THE TOXICITY LOE**

Examples of hypothetical cases of toxicity testing LOE results are provided in Table 6. If the only toxicity result was from the Microtox assay (cases T8 and T9), the ecological relevance of this bacterial test might make this questionable, whereas if this was supported by other toxicity tests, the LOE score would be higher. The consideration of ammonia and sulfide effects is important. If separate toxicity is seen from these at the concentrations present in the test sites (e.g. case T10), then that is a concern in itself, in addition to any effects that might be due to other toxicants. The management of ammonia as a COPC might however be different to the management of other contaminants.

### **4.3 Bioaccumulation and Biomagnification**

Bioaccumulation refers to the accumulation of contaminants in the tissues of organisms through any route, including respiration, ingestion, or direct contact with contaminated sediment or water (USEPA, 2000a, b; Moore et al., 2005; Simpson et al., 2005). Bioavailability and organism physiology are the two most important variables affecting chemical contaminant body burdens. Moore et al. (2005) review and discuss the many factors that affect the assessment of bioaccumulation.

Many non-ionic (hydrophobic) organic chemicals (HOCs), such as PCBs and PAHs, are lipophilic and readily taken up by many organisms and accumulate in fatty tissues. In general, substances with an organic carbon adsorption coefficient ( $K_{oc}$ ) of <500–1000 L/kg are not likely to be sorbed to sediment. Generally, only HOCs with a high octanol-water partition coefficient,  $\log K_{ow} > 4.5$ , need to be considered for potential to bioaccumulate. While PAHs are readily taken up by many organisms, many are rapidly metabolised. Synthetic chemicals such as PCBs that are persistent (highly resistant to metabolic degradation) and exhibit high

lipophilicity may accumulate to high levels. Many HOCs may also biomagnify (increase in concentration through three or more trophic levels) through food chains. The biomagnification of metals does not occur, although secondary poisoning (trophic transfer of two trophic levels) may be observed.

The bioaccumulation of metals by invertebrates is complex and strongly affected by organism feeding behaviour (ingestion rates, selectivity of feeding) and the different sources of metals (overlying waters, pore waters, sediments and speciation) (Luoma and Rainbow, 2005; Moore et al., 2005; Simpson and Batley, 2007). Measurements of body concentrations (body residues) of metals may provide useful information on possible effects of non-essential and non-regulated metals, but only if strong and clear relationships exist between bioaccumulation and toxic effects (Borgmann, 2000; Simpson and Batley, 2007). For metals that are sequestered into non-toxic forms or are regulated over the concentration range of interest, the use of body concentrations to predict effects is not appropriate (Borgmann, 2000; Luoma and Rainbow, 2005).

Field measurements (body residues in field-collected organisms), laboratory measurements (bioaccumulation tests with laboratory animals), surrogate measures of bioaccumulation (biometric methods, gut fluid extraction) and modelling (biota-to-sediment accumulation factors (BSAF) and theoretical bioaccumulation potential (TBP)) can all be used for assessing bioaccumulation of organic chemicals. Each approach has a number advantages/disadvantages and assumptions/uncertainties associated with it (USEPA, 2000a; Moore et al., 2005; Simpson et al., 2005). Care should be taken to use a suitable depuration period (e.g. 24 h) for gut clearance before body concentrations of organisms are determined.

Examples of typical applications of the bioaccumulation LOE are given in Table 7.

Table 6. Line-of-evidence decision matrix for toxicity test examples (using estuarine marine tests)<sup>a</sup>

Case	Assessment using Toxicity Tests (% toxic effect)				Ammonia (A), Sulfide (S)	LOE Score	Explanation
T1	Algae growth inhibition ≥50% (WS) (3)	Sea urchin, 72-h larval development 20-50% (SC, PW) (2)	Amphipod, 10-d reproduction ≥50% (C, WS) (3)	Copepod 10-d reproduction ≥50% (C, WS) (3)	Ammonia = low Sulfide = ND	3	Significant chronic toxicity in all tests. Chronic toxicity to algae in pore water. Toxicity not caused by ammonia or sulfide. Chronic toxicity to amphipod and copepod in whole-sediments.
T2	Oyster, 48-h larval development 20-50% (SC, PW) (2)	Bivalve 10-d survival <20% (A, WS) (1)	Amphipod, 10-d reproduction ≥50% (C, WS) (3)	Copepod, 10-d reproduction ≥50% (C, WS) (3)	Ammonia = low Sulfide = ND	3	Mixed results for acute (survival) tests. Chronic toxicity to amphipod and copepod in whole-sediment. Toxicity not caused by ammonia or sulfide.
T3	Bacteria (Microtox®) <20% (A, PW) (1)	Amphipod 10-d survival <20% (A, WS) (1)	Sea urchin, 72-h larval development <20% (SC, PW) (1)	Amphipod, 10-d reproduction ≥50% (C, WS) (3)	Ammonia = low Sulfide = ND	3	No toxicity for acute tests. Chronic toxicity to amphipod in WS. Toxicity not ammonia or sulfide. Chronic toxicity certain when ≥50%.
T4	Bacteria (Microtox®) <20% (A, PW) (1)	Sea urchin, 72-h larval development <20% (SC, PW) (1)		Algae 72-h growth ≥50% (PW, C) (3)	Ammonia = low Sulfide = ND	3	No toxicity for acute tests. Chronic toxicity to algae in pore water. Toxicity not ammonia or sulfide.
T5	Algae growth inhibition <20% (WS) (1)	Amphipod 10-d survival ≥50% (A, WS) (3)	Copepod 10-d reproduction 20-50% (C, WS) (2)		Ammonia = low Sulfide = mid	3	High toxicity for one acute tests. No toxicity in other acute tests. No chronic toxicity to algae in pore water.
T6	Algae Growth inhibition 20-50% (WS) (2)	Amphipod 10-d survival 20-50% (A, WS) (2)	Sea urchin, 72-h larval development 20-50% (SC, PW) (2)	Algae 72-h growth <20% (PW, C) (1)	Ammonia = mid Sulfide = ND	2	Moderate toxicity for acute tests. No chronic toxicity to algae in pore water.
T7	Polychaete 10-d survival <20% (A, WS) (1)	Sea urchin, 72-h larval development 20-50% (SC, PW) (2)	Amphipod, 10-d reproduction 20-50% (C, WS) (2)		Ammonia = mid Sulfide = ND	2	Mixed results for acute test. Moderate chronic toxicity that may, in part, be non-contaminant effects.
T8	Bacteria (Microtox®) ≥50% (A, PW) (3)	Polychaete 10-d survival <20% (A, WS) (1)	Sea urchin 1-h fertilisation <20% (SC, PW) (1)		Ammonia = mid Sulfide = ND	2	High toxicity only in bacteria test, but is probably not important. Other tests are not necessarily very sensitive or are inconclusive.
T9	Bacteria (Microtox®) 20-50% (A, PW) (2)	Amphipod 10-d survival <20% (A, WS) (1)	Oyster, 48-h larval development <20% (SC, PW) (1)	Copepod 10-d reproduction <20% (C, WS) (1)	Ammonia = low Sulfide = ND	1	Toxicity only in bacteria test. No toxicity in the other acute tests. No chronic toxicity to copepod in whole sediment.
<b>Special cases (toxicity from naturally occurring ammonia or sulfide)</b>							
T10	Algae growth inhibition <20% (WS) (1)	Amphipod 10-d survival ≥50% (A, WS) (3)	Sea urchin, 72-h larval development 20-50% (SC, PW) (2)	Algae 72-h growth ≥50% (PW, C) (3)	Ammonia = high Sulfide = ND	2	Mixed results for acute tests. Chronic toxicity of PW to algae. High PW-ammonia. No other toxicants! Definitive algae test indicates NH <sub>3</sub> toxicity. NH <sub>3</sub> ≥LC50 for amphipod.

<sup>a</sup> WS = whole sediment; PW = pore water; A = acute test; C = chronic test; SC = sub-chronic; ND = not detected; not all possible LOE or cases included.



Table 7. Line-of-evidence decision matrix for bioaccumulation/biomagnification examples<sup>a</sup>

Case	Bioaccumulation Assessments		Biomagnification	LOE Score	Explanation
B1	Field-collected biota bioaccumulation (2) Significant, <3× controls (HOCs)	Transplanted biota – laboratory bioaccumulation assay (3) Significant, ≥3× controls (HOCs)	Not present (1)	<b>3</b> (Significant concern)	Bioaccumulated HOC concentrations are five or more times greater than that measured in the controls (treatments or sites)
B2	Transplanted biota – <i>in situ</i> bioaccumulation assay (3) Significant, ≥3× control (HOCs)		Not present (1)	<b>3</b> (Significant concern)	Bioaccumulated HOC concentrations are five or more times greater than that measured in the controls (treatments or sites)
B3	Field-collected biota bioaccumulation (2) Significant, <3× controls (HOCs)		Dioxins present and bioaccumulated (1-2)	<b>3</b> (Significant concern)	Bioaccumulated HOC concentrations are statistically greater than that measured in the controls (treatments or sites). Biomagnification likely.
B4	Transplanted biota – <i>in situ</i> bioaccumulation assay (1) Not significant	Surrogate method (SPMD) (3) Significant (HOCs), ≥3× control		<b>3</b> (Significant concern)	No bioaccumulation measured, but surrogate method finds (statistically) that contaminants are very bioavailable.
B5	Field-collected biota bioaccumulation (2) Significant, <3× controls (HOCs)	Surrogate method (GFM) (2) Significant, <3× controls (HOCs)		<b>2</b> (Possible concern)	Bioaccumulated HOC concentrations are statistically greater than that measured in the controls (treatments or sites)
B6	Transplanted biota – laboratory bioaccumulation assay Not significant (HOCs)	Surrogate method (XAD-2) (2) Significant, <3× controls (HOCs)	Dioxins present (1-2)	<b>2</b> (Possible concern)	No bioaccumulation measured, but surrogate method finds (statistically) that HOCs are bioavailable. Dioxins present.
B7	Field-collected biota bioaccumulation (2) Significant, <3× controls (HOCs)			<b>2</b> (Possible concern)	Bioaccumulated concentrations are statistically greater than that measured in the controls (treatments or sites)
B8	Transplanted biota – laboratory bioaccumulation assay (3) Significant, ≥3× controls (Metals)	Surrogate method (Tenax) (1) Not significant	Mercury present – little bioaccumulation (1-2)	<b>2</b> (Possible concern)	Bioaccumulated metal concentrations ≥3× measured in the controls, but effects due to metal bioaccumulation are unlikely.
B9	Field-collected biota bioaccumulation (1) Not significant	Transplanted biota – <i>in situ</i> bioaccumulation assay (1) Not significant	Not present (1)	<b>1</b> (No concern)	No significant difference in the bioaccumulation data relative to controls (treatments or sites)
<b>Special cases (metal bioaccumulation)</b>					
B10	Field-collected biota bioaccumulation (2) Significant, <3× controls (metals)		Not present (1)	<b>1</b> (No concern)	Field-bioaccumulation of metals, but effects due to metal bioaccumulation is unlikely.

<sup>a</sup> HOCs = hydrophobic organic contaminants (e.g. PAHs, PCBs, PAHs); surrogate method = laboratory procedure used to measure contaminant release of contaminants (generally HOCs) from sediment particles to simulate route of uptake by biota, e.g. laboratory-based use of resins (Tenax and XAD-2); semi-permeable membrane devices (SPMD) or gut fluid mimics (GFMs); not all possible LOE or cases included.

## 4.4 Ecological Assessment

The objective of an ecological LOE in a WOE assessment is to obtain information that can help ascertain whether a location's ecology has been negatively or extensively impacted. For this purpose, benthic macrobenthic invertebrate communities are commonly used as they are ecologically important and often respond to significant changes in sediment chemistry (Pearson and Rosenberg, 1978; Dauer 1993). Although the primary objective is to protect biota, paradoxically, ecological lines of evidence are often negated due to their prohibitive labour cost. Ecological indicators are also poorly utilised because of a general lack of understanding of the direct cause-effect pathway and hence lack of specificity to a particular contaminant or set of contaminants.

Because ecological LOEs are to be used in concert with other measures in a WOE, the rigour with which this assessment needs to be undertaken is less than might be required for a comprehensive stand-alone benthic survey. The latter would need to take into account the spatio-temporal distributions of benthic assemblages; and would entail multiple reference and impacted sites to ensure adequate statistical power and to minimise Type II errors, i.e. failing to observe a difference when a difference actually occurs. As a result, the likelihood of a Type II error will be substantially greater in a LOE study than that of a rigorously designed benthic community monitoring program. Even so, the fundamental principles of experimental design and the employment of suitable statistical techniques are still pertinent issues which require adherence to, as these dictate the quality and relevance of the data collected and the amount of weight which can be assigned to any findings.

### 4.4.1 LINES OF EVIDENCE USING BENTHIC COMMUNITIES

#### Observational indicators of sediment health

Benthic communities have a profound influence on the productivity of surficial sediments by altering the physical and chemical conditions of the sediment-water interface. In environments where the total abundance of benthos has been severely impoverished, marked changes to the morphology of the sediment-water interface should be clearly evident. Such changes include: the absence of irrigation burrows; the presence of single-type of burrow, indicating the overriding dominance of a single taxon; a very thin oxic layer which is predominately a furry-like, surficial biofilm; and algal mats. Even though some resilient taxa are ubiquitous in even the most grossly-contaminated locations, they are generally small, shallow burrowers whose morphological imprint on the sediment is significantly less pronounced than found in diverse environments with a high level of biotic integrity. The use of such observational indicators can form a useful component of the ecology LOE.

#### Univariate indicators of sediment health

Univariate measurements are frequently used to summarise the structural attributes of a community, and generally include the total number of individuals, indices for richness, diversity and evenness, and the abundances of *a priori* selected taxa (Antrill and Depledge, 1997; Clements, 1997). An advantage of this approach is that the variables are amenable to several commonly used univariate statistical techniques (e.g. ANOVA, correlation and regression analyses). However, in order to provide robust, ecologically useful information, univariate community attributes need to show a high level of response to contaminants and possess a low level of natural variability.

Community indices provide a simple approach for gaining information regarding the ecological integrity of a site. These include techniques which individually measure or encompass the concepts of richness, sample size and evenness, e.g. Shannon-Weiner Index, Simpson's Index, and Pielou's Evenness (Shannon and Weaver, 1963; Pielou, 1966; Krebs, 1994). Numerous studies have shown a strong correlation between many of these variables and an increase in the concentration of contaminants, and consequently these measurements continue to form the basis of many benthic community studies (e.g. Gray et al., 1990; Lindegarth and Hoskins, 2001; Johnston and Roberts, 2009).

The differential loss, replacement, proliferation and relative abundance of taxa are represented in indices of diversity, richness and evenness, with a decline in these indices often symptomatic of ecological stress (Newman, 1998; Rogers and Hsu, 2001). The underpinning assumption is that contaminants can induce stress which affects the structure and stability of communities, which is subsequently observed as a change in the number of species, and their relative abundances (Krassulya, 2001). It is emphasised that these do not necessarily manifest as a change in total abundance (the sum of all individuals from all taxa). Some taxa are relatively resilient to perturbation and can thrive under conditions of attenuated inter-specific competition and increased resources. The high prevalence of such taxa commonly results in an increase in total abundance. Consequently, total abundance should not be used in isolation when attributing contaminant exposure to changes in community metrics.

A decline in abundance of sensitive taxa can be expected as contaminant exposure can amplify the incidence of mortality; reduce the physiological condition of animals, attenuate fecundity; and increase disease susceptibility (Newman, 1998). Declines have been observed across all coarse taxonomic groups (e.g. polychaetes, decapods, bivalves, gastropods), although some taxa appear to be more intolerant than others. For example, amphipods are frequently scarce or absent in contaminated environments (e.g. Rand and Petrocelli, 1985; Warwick, 2001). Identification of potential study or regionally specific sensitive taxa must be made prior to analysis, enabling the testing of taxa specific hypotheses. The numeric dominance of deposit-feeding taxa such as Capitellidae often reflects a shift from larger, species in stable, unpolluted environments, to small-bodied, short-lived and highly fecund species in contaminated and disturbed environments (Pianka, 1970; Weston, 1990). In cases of nutrient enrichment, this shift in species can result in an overall increase in the total abundance of individuals within a population, possibly due to a concurrent increase in the availability of food used by deposit-feeders (Pearson and Rosenberg, 1978; Tsutsumi, 1990). However, there is no evidence to suggest that this response is elicited when exposure is due to of metals and organic contaminants.

Measurements of diversity and richness are the mostly commonly examined metrics of community structure. The simplest measurement of diversity is species (or taxa) richness. However, this measurement has three serious limitations (Krebs, 1999): (i) it is improbable that all species will be counted; (ii) the boundary for the community being quantified is arbitrarily defined in space and time; and (iii) the measurement negates the concept of heterogeneity, and the relative abundance of each species.

Graphical techniques complement rather than replace the more formal statistical analyses (univariate and multivariate). *K*-dominance curves plot the cumulative ranked abundance against taxa rank (or log taxa rank), providing useful information about dominance, and the number of species (or taxa) that are dominating a community (Lambshead et al. 1983). *K*-dominance curves are often modified to create Lorenz curves, in which the taxa rank (x-axis) is rescaled and is measured against the cumulative abundance, enabling dominance to be partitioned from the number of taxa. The underpinning assumption for these curves is that 'stressed' communities will contain few taxa that will contribute to a significant proportion of

the overall abundance, i.e. a reduction in evenness due to the dominance of a few taxa. Consequently, the curves for the less even communities will sit above those that are more even.

Although commonly used, there is much criticism of univariate measurements due to the loss of information which occurs when assemblages are reduced to a series of variables (Warwick and Clarke, 1991). For example, two locations may have similar levels of diversity, even though the locations contain very different taxa. There are also some concerns about the suitability of applying these measurements to standard univariate statistical techniques (e.g. ANOVA), as their distributions often deviate from the assumptions of normality and the homogeneity of variances which underlie these techniques (McArdle and Anderson, 2004). Nevertheless, many univariate measurements are founded on frequently observed ecological observations and hypotheses, and commonly provide relevant information which may aid in discriminating between putatively impacted and unimpacted locations

### Multivariate measurement

There is a range of multivariate tools that can provide a powerful means of isolating the relationships between ecological communities and co-varying contaminants (Hewitt et al., 2005; Anderson et al., 2006; Thrush et al., 2008; Hewitt et al., 2009; Chariton et al., 2010a, 2011). In contrast to univariate approaches, multivariate techniques do not require the data to be reduced to a single variable, but rather comparisons are made between two or more sites by quantifying the similarities (and differences) in their taxa and relative abundances. As a result, multivariate approaches can capture and reflect differences in whole assemblages.

Non-metric multidimensional scaling (nMDS) is one of the most commonly used ordination techniques as it is conceptually simple to understand. In nMDS, the output is presented as either a 2- or 3-dimensional ordination 'map' in which samples that are more similar to each other are positioned closer than those that are less similar. Although the graphical representation provided by nMDS is intuitive, the complex number of multivariate relationships that occurs in a large dataset, and the reduction of this information down to a 2- or 3-dimensions can distort the spatial relationships between samples (Clarke and Warwick, 1994). In most statistical packages, the level of distortion is calculated as a measure of 'stress', with a lower stress value indicating a more accurate representation of the spatial relationships on the ordination map, thereby increasing the power of the interpretation. The variance among or within the samples as traditionally measured by ANOVAs is not quantified by nMDS and other analogous ordination techniques. Additional analysis is required to establish if pre-defined groups or treatments (i.e. location, site or time) contain significantly different assemblages. The most commonly-used approaches for benthic studies are Analysis of Similarities (ANOSIM) and Permutational Multivariate Analysis of Variance (PERMANOVA formally known as NPMANOVA), both routines are available in the Primer 6+ statistical package (PRIMER-E Ltd, Plymouth, United Kingdom).

The greater sensitivity of multivariate techniques can also be one of the pitfalls, as significant differences between reference assemblages are frequently observed. To accommodate this, differences in the variability within treatments should also be evaluated. In cases of obvious perturbation, variability will be greater among the reference than the impacted assemblages, however, these two treatments should still be spatially discrete. This may be done qualitatively by examining ordination plots; via the use of distance similarity matrices (e.g. Primer's SIMPER); or by using a priori defined groups (e.g. Canonical Analysis of Principal coordinates) (Hewitt et al., 2005; Anderson et al., 2006; Hewitt et al., 2009; Chariton et al., 2010a). Once differences between treatments have been identified, follow-up analysis with

procedures such as Primer's SIMPER or CANACO's triplots enables users to identify those taxa which are characteristic of each treatment.

A more explicit investigation of the links between observed differences in biological communities and other environmental data (e.g. sediment chemistry) requires other statistical approaches. The simplest approach is to overlay nMDS ordination maps with measurements of suspected correlating environmental variables. A more formal approach is Primer's BIO-ENV (Primer 5, 2001), which examines correlative relationships between abiotic and biotic matrices. Alternatively, constrained (or direct) techniques, e.g. Canonical Correspondence Analysis (CCA) and distance-based redundancy analysis (dbRDA) can be employed (Clarke and Ainsworth, 1993; Jongman et al., 1995; Legendre and Legendre, 2012). These techniques may be advantageous as they enable the environmental data to be integrated directly into the analysis. In addition, the influence of covariables such as grain size can be partitioned from the analysis, potentially providing clearer patterns between benthic communities and sediment chemistry (ter Braak and Verdonschot, 1995). Although the intent of the WOE assessment is to use the extent of co-occurrence of effects in each LOE to support a finding that the system is impacted, additional information on covariables is valuable for this assessment.

A number of new approaches are showing great promise for extracting additional detail on how biological communities (and the taxa they encompass) may be being modified by environmental variables. Two notable examples are Threshold Indicator Taxa Analysis (TITAN) (Baker and King, 2010) and Gradient forest analysis (Ellis et al., 2012), both freely available for the R software environment (<http://www.r-project.org/>). TITAN is designed to identify where the greatest change in the species abundance and occurrence occurs along an environmental gradient. For example, in a hypothetical scenario examining changes in benthic macroinvertebrate communities along pronounced salinity gradient, TITAN can identify which taxa declined or increased as a response to incremental changes in salinity. In addition, evidence for a community level threshold can be obtained from the program running independent comparisons using the normalized changes in both increasing and decreasing taxa. An additional advantage of TITAN is that the program uses boot-strapping to produce estimates of uncertainty, with narrow confidence limits adding credence to the evidence of a community threshold, while wider confidence limits are indicative of other responses (e.g. random and modal) (Baker and King, 2010). Presently, TITAN is limited to detecting species and community threshold responses to a single environmental variable (predicator), with a multivariable version currently in development (pers comm. Matthew Baker, University of Maryland, Baltimore County).

Random forest models have been shown to be a powerful tool for exploring the importance of environmental predictors on individual taxa, and for extrapolating the position along gradients where pronounced changes in abundance may occur (Cutler et al., 2007; Peters et al., 2007; Knudby et al., 2010). Gradient forest analysis extends this approach from taxa specific responses to biological assemblages, providing information on where along a range of environmental gradients marked compositional changes may be occurring, permitting the identification of key environmental thresholds (Ellis et al., 2012). The authors have since demonstrated the capacity of the technique to detect key environmental variables that correlated with composition changes in marine benthos, and the threshold values at which composition turnover was greatest (Ellis et al., 2012). Gradient forest analysis has several favourable attributes which distinguish it from approaches such as CCA and dbRDA. Firstly, due to its machine-learning heritage, it has greater capacity than other approaches to capture the complex relationships between multiple environmental predictors and species. Secondly, environmental variables do not require transformation, nor do correlative variables require removal prior to computation. Thirdly, the approach is less subject to distortion than

dissimilarity measurements which are constrained, e.g. Bray-Curtis dissimilarity is bounded between 0 and 1. It is emphasised that Gradient forest analysis is not an alternative approach for more formalised techniques (e.g. CCA and dbRDA), but rather, an exploratory tool which can be used to provide additional evidence for teasing out the often complex relationships which occur between biological communities and environmental variables.

#### **4.4.2 RECOLONISATION EXPERIMENTS**

In many instances, it may not be possible to find reference sites suitable for comparisons, or additional ecological evidence may be warranted which extends past the correlative findings of benthic field studies. In such cases recolonisation experiments may prove beneficial. The underlying objective of these experiments is to examine differences in recolonised benthic assemblages between defaunated sediments translocated from impacted and reference locations (e.g. Roach et al., 2000; Pettigrove and Hoffman, 2005; Chariton et al., 2011). Communities can be analysed using similar procedures as field studies, however, direct comparisons of measurements are not possible due to differences in spatial scales (sites verses containers) and recruitment patterns (established verses recruited fauna). As with all experiments, the methods employed will influence outcomes, with major considerations including: the handling and preparation of the sediment; container effects; larval dispersal and mobility; and the length, timing and positioning of the experiments. Due to a lack of a true control, recolonisation experiments using translocated sediments cannot identify causality. However, they enable sediments that were formerly spatially separated to be compared under similar environmental conditions, removing the confounding influence of space that occurs in traditional field studies.

#### **4.4.3 ECOGENOMICS**

Ecological studies are an important line of evidence in the assessment of sediment quality. In marine systems ecological data are commonly derived from the collection and enumeration of macrobenthic organisms (e.g. polychaetes and bivalves) (Thrush et al., 2008; Chariton et al., 2010b). However, macrobenthic data have many significant limitations:

- (i) they are costly to collect; labour intensive;
- (ii) they require regionally-specific taxonomic expertise;
- (iii) they require a large number of replicate samples; and
- (iv) it is impractical to include juvenile and cryptic taxa.

From a risk assessment perspective, a critical concern of macrobenthic studies is that it represents only a small fraction of the total diversity. Often less than 40 taxa are being used to make assumptions about total ecosystem health. This is despite that fact that size, trophic position, diet, behaviour and life-stage influence the resilience and resistance of organisms to environmental disturbances.

Whilst the inclusion of meio- and microfauna (including algae and diatoms) has been demonstrated to be of great benefit, with many of these taxa shown to be sensitive indicators of environmental condition, their size and taxonomic issues have made it impractical to include these organisms in routine monitoring programs. New DNA-based 'ecogenomic' approaches to monitoring sedimentary environments are currently under development that enable a more rapid and comprehensive examination of the biotic composition of sediments,

regardless of size or taxonomy, providing a more realistic view of the ecological status of a system (Chariton et al., 2010b).

Ecogenomics can broadly be defined as the examination of genetic materials from the environment (van Staalen and Roelofs, 2011). The use of molecular tools in community ecology are by no means new, however, the need to isolate and sequence individual genes in order to obtain taxonomic information has previously constrained their viability and subsequent adoption into routine monitoring programs. Since the advent of pyrosequencing in 2005 (Margulies et al., 2005), the molecular sciences have undergone a paradigm-shift, with high throughput sequencers eliminating the need for cloning, and the time, costs and biases associated with this practice. High throughput sequencers continue to evolve rapidly, improving in quality, output and read length (Shokralla et al., 2012). As it is currently technically impractical to study the complete genomic constituents of complex environment samples (i.e. the genomes of all sampled taxa) with the spatio-temporal replication required for environmental monitoring programs, a 'gene-centric' approach, commonly referred to as 'metabarcoding' or 'environmental-DNA surveys' is used to produce biodiversity information by examining single or multiple genes of interest. Chariton et al., (2010b) demonstrated that high throughput sequencing could be applied to examine the ecological composition of estuarine sediments. In this study, the macro-, meio- and micro-biota of sediments were sampled from a reference and contaminated estuary. Using multivariate techniques commonly applied to marine community data, the ecogenomic data were able to discriminate between the assemblages sampled from the reference and impacted locations, regardless of the biological fraction (macro-, meio- or micro-), or taxonomic level (sequence to Phyla). Conversely, comparisons between these two systems using traditional macrobenthic data (approx. 50 taxa) produced ambiguous results (Chariton et al., 2010b). To date, environmental DNA (e-DNA) surveys have been performed on a wide range environmental of matrices (e.g. Deagle et al., 2009; Bik et al., 2012; Baldwin et al., 2013), with the approach continually demonstrating its capacity to provide far broader coverage of biodiversity than is available using traditional means. As the field matures, it is becoming increasingly evident that comprehensive biological coverage requires the targeting of a number of genes, and that downstream bioinformatic pipelines can have a pronounced effect on the quality and ecological interpretation of the data (Coissac et al., 2012; Taberlet et al., 2012; Tang et al., 2012). In its current capacity, one notable limitation of the approach is its inability to provide accurate quantifiable data, however; it is foreseeable that this issue will be resolved as 'PCR-free' techniques become more refined and suitable for e-DNA applications.

#### **4.4.4 ECOLOGY LOE SUMMARY**

In order to make valid judgement regarding the ecological integrity of a specific environment, comparisons must be made with suitable reference locations. Furthermore, several statistical lines of ecological information (e.g. univariate and multivariate interpretations) must be incorporated to compensate for the accuracy of specific indicators in over and under-estimating the ecological condition of perturbed and health systems, respectively. Multivariate analysis, and graphical assessments (K-dominance curves), supplemented by information from CCA analyses, are the most valuable approaches to assess field data. Multivariate analyses should also be used to analyse data from recolonisation experiments.

The following checklist can be used to assess the ecological evidence:

- (i) Observational: Is there evidence of burrowing? Is there oxygen penetration into surface sediments? Is there a prevalence of some taxa?

- (ii) Univariate analyses: What is the diversity of taxa in impacted vs reference sites (possible use of Lorenz curve)? Is there a loss of sensitive taxa? Is there an increase in robust taxa?
- (iii) Multivariate analyses: What is the difference in the dispersion between impact and reference sites? Is there different clustering of impact vs reference sites? Are there statistical differences in community composition between impacted sites vs reference sites? Which taxa are contributed to the differences between impact and reference sites? Are there strong correlative relationships between the biotic and contaminant datasets? Is there evidence that biological communities change along certain points of an environmental gradient?

The above also be applied to transplant/recolonisation experiments for additional evidence, however usually sufficient data will be obtained without this more costly exercise. On the basis of the above analyses the extent of difference between control and reference sites can be ranked. Examples of the applications of the ecology LOE are given in Table 8.



**Table 8. Line-of-evidence decision matrix for ecological assessment examples <sup>a</sup>**

Case	Ecological Assessments		Factor	LOE Score	Explanation
E1	Benthic community structure analysis: benthic survey (3) Significantly different to reference	Manipulative transplant assessment (3) Significantly different to reference	Normal	3	Effects significant and high
E2	Benthic community structure analysis: benthic survey (2) Significantly different to reference, but moderate	Manipulative transplant assessment (3) Significantly different to reference	Possible salinity effects	3	Effects significant and high
E3	Benthic community structure analysis: benthic survey (3) Significantly different to reference		Possible grain size effects	3	Effects significant and high
E4	Benthic community structure analysis: benthic survey (3) Significantly different to reference		Water column effects detected due to intermittent boating activity	2	Effects significant but possibly confounded by anthropogenic activity. Note such confounding factors should be considered before site selection
E5		Manipulative transplant assessment (3) Significantly different to reference	Major differences between native and colonising species	2	Effects significant but species recolonising significantly different from test site species
E6		Manipulative transplant assessment (2) Significantly different to reference, but moderate	Normal	2	Effects significant but moderate
E7	Benthic community structure analysis: benthic survey (1) Not significantly different to reference			1	Effects not significant
E8		Manipulative transplant assessment (1) Not significantly different to reference		1	Effects not significant

<sup>a</sup> not all possible LOE or cases included.

## 5. Uncertainties in WOE Assessments

It is important to understand the uncertainties and limitations in the various LOEs that comprise a WOE assessment, as well as those associated with the SQGs (Batley et al., 2002). Many of these have been discussed in the preceding pages. The potential for errors begins with sediment sampling, handling and storage. Sediments are very heterogeneous, both physically and chemically and it is typical to spatially average sampling. How appropriate this is must be assessed against the objectives of any study. Similarly study objectives will determine to what depth a sediment should be sampled.

Perturbation of sediment and porewater chemistry due to oxidation can significantly alter pore water metal concentrations, and indicate toxicity when none would be seen at the concentrations that would exist in the field.

There are many uncertainties associated with toxicity testing. A full range of tests are seldom applied and these are not always the most sensitive. The relationship between laboratory tests and field responses is poorly understood as is the extrapolation to population level effects. Consideration of different exposure routes (water vs sediment vs diet) is often poorly covered.

Benthic community studies are a major challenge and subject to confounding stressors that are both physical and chemical.

The uncertainties in data from both chemical and biological studies need to be understood not only for measurement variability but accounting for sample variability. The same is true for trigger values, where values may be confounded in their derivation by co-occurrence issues, making them unreliable. The saving grace is that multiple LOEs give greater confidence in the delineation of cause and effect relationships.

Table 9 provides a checklist to alert practitioners to the uncertainty issues in WOE assessments.

**Table 9. Checklist for evaluating data uncertainties/limitations (adapted from Batley et al., 2002)**

PARAMETER	SOURCES OF UNCERTAINTY	RECOMMENDATIONS
Sampling, Transport and Storage	Choice of reference sites	Ensure physico-chemical and biological characteristics similar between reference and exposed sites; use multiple reference sites
	Choice of sample sites	For ecological studies, ensure sample sites are selected so as to avoid confounding factors, e.g. disturbance due to boating activities
	Sediment heterogeneity	Spatial averaging appropriate to study purposes and chemical and biological measurements. Undertake a pilot study to determine the number of samples required to ensure sampling is representative of the sediments to be assessed.
	Pore water and sediment sampling depth	Depth-integrated samples; depth based on study objectives, physico-chemical and particularly biological realities; same depths for chemistry, toxicity and biology. Note that AVS is depth dependent, so sample homogenising over large depths will give misleading results

PARAMETER	SOURCES OF UNCERTAINTY	RECOMMENDATIONS
	Pore water sampling methods	No “best” method; minimise oxidation, sample under nitrogen gas atmosphere
	Obtaining sufficient pore water	<i>In situ</i> peepers best for minimally changed chemistry; centrifugation best for rapidly generating large volumes
	Sample storage	Store cool in the dark, excluding oxygen; test as soon as possible, reporting storage time and conditions
	Changes prior to testing/analysis	Take all reasonable precautions; recognize possibility of such changes, some of which can be predicted from knowledge of sediment physico-chemical characteristics
Sediment Chemistry	Appropriate measurements	Measure all contaminants of potential concern, and key modifiers (e.g. water: pH, DOC; sediment : AVS/SEM, grain size, TOC)
	Metals bioavailability	Measure easily extractable metals (e.g. cold 1M HCl), not total metals, plus parameters that affect bioavailability (e.g. AVS)
	AVS/SEM comparisons	A useful qualifier of metal bioavailability, but possibility of Type I errors for some metals. Note possible depth dependence
	Organic carbon normalisation	Recommended that organic carbon normalisation be applied to non-polar organics only over the range 0.2-10% organic carbon
	Sediment quality values	Use only for screening and not to infer cause of toxicity
Ecotoxicology	Grain size effects	Similar grain sizes for reference and test sediments; grain sizes must not adversely affect test organisms
	Sieving – removal of coarse particles	Not encouraged; if necessary, do under nitrogen and allow redox equilibria to re-establish
	Test species: exposure routes, sensitivity, residency	Appropriately sensitive range of ecologically important taxa including species from reference areas; exposure routes complete
	Sediment spiking	Adequate equilibration times; recognize laboratory artefacts; environmentally realistic concentrations; complete exposure routes; full physico-chemical documentation
	Laboratory vs field	Separate lines of evidence; one does not validate the other. Do not use alone for decision-making
	Cause-and-effect	Correlative (e.g. gradient) analyses coupled with TIE or CBR determinations
Benthic Community Structure	Spatial and temporal scales	Tailor to purpose; ensure common sampling protocols in comparing temporal data
	Sieve sizes	Based on study objectives and key species present / species relationships
	Species identifications	Species designations may not be reliable; conduct concurrent higher level taxonomic community structure assessments and/or consider functional groupings
	Exposure routes	Must be known for at least key (dominant) and keystone species, along with relative sensitivities via these routes

PARAMETER	SOURCES OF UNCERTAINTY	RECOMMENDATIONS
	Stressor identification	Physico-chemical and biotic stressors must be characterised, including interactions (spatial and temporal)
Data Uncertainties and QA/QC	Data - significant figures	Generally no more than two significant figures are warranted or defensible
	Data analysis	Estimate Type II errors for chosen design
	QA/QC	Ensure QA/QC are adequately addressed

## 6. References

- Accardi-Dey, A. and Gschwend, P.M. (2002). Assessing the combined roles of natural organic matter and black carbon as sorbents in sediments. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 36, 21-39.
- Accardi-Dey, A. and Gschwend, P.M. (2003). Reinterpreting literature sorption data considering both adsorption into organic carbon and adsorption onto black carbon. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 37, 99-106.
- Adams, M.S. and Stauber, J.L. (2004). Development of a whole-sediment toxicity test using a benthic marine microalga. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 23, 1957-1968.
- Ahlf, W., Drost, W. and Heise, S. (2009). Incorporation of metal bioavailability into regulatory frameworks-metal exposure in water and sediment. *J. Soils Sed.*, 9, 411-419.
- Anderson, M.J., Hewitt, J.E., Ford, R.B., Thrush, S.F. (2006). Regional models of benthic ecosystem health: predicting pollution gradients from biological data. Auckland Regional Council, TP317, Auckland, 103 pp.
- Ankley G.T., Phipps, G.L., Leonard, E.N., Benoit, D.A., Mattson, V.R., Kosian, P.A., Cotter, A.M., Dierkes, J.R., Hansen, D.J. and Mahony, J.D. (1991). Acid-volatile sulfide as a factor mediating cadmium and nickel bioavailability in contaminated sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 10, 1299-1307.
- Ankley, G.T. and Schubauerberigan, M.K. (1995). Background and overview of current sediment toxicity identification evaluation procedures. *J. Equat. Ecosys. Health*, 4, 133-149.
- Ankley, G.T., Collyard, S.C., Moson, P.D. and Kosian, P.A. (1994). Influence of ultraviolet light on the toxicity of sediments contaminated with polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 13, 1791-1796.
- Ankley, G.T., Di Toro, D.M., Hansen, D.J. and Berry, W.J. (1996). Technical basis and proposal for deriving sediment quality criteria for metals. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 15, 2056-2062.
- Ankley, G.T., Katko, A. and Arthur, J. (1990). Identification of ammonia as an important sediment-associated toxicant in the lower Fox River and Green Bay, Wisconsin. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 9, 312-322.
- Antrill M.J. and Depledge, M.H. (1997). Community and population indicators of ecosystem health: targeting links between levels of biological organisation. *Aquat. Toxicol.* 38, 183-197.
- ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000). Australian and New Zealand guidelines for fresh and marine water quality. Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council/Agricultural and Resource Management Council of Australia and New Zealand.
- ASTM (2000). Standard guide for collection, storage, characterization, and manipulation of sediments for toxicological testing, E 1391-94. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA, USA.
- ASTM (2001). Standard guide for conducting in-situ field bioassays with marine, estuarine, and freshwater bivalves, E 1222-01. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA, USA.
- ASTM (2003). Standard test method for for measuring toxicity of sediment-associated contaminants with estuarine and marine invertebrates. E 1367-03. American Society for Testing and Materials, West Conshohocken, PA, USA.
- Babut, M.P., Batley, G.E., Camusso, M., den Besten, P.J. and de Deckere, E. (2005). Overview of sediment quality guidelines and their uses in Europe and Australia. In: *Use of Sediment Quality Guidelines and Related Tools for the Assessment of Contaminated Sediments*, Wenning, R., Batley, G., Ingersoll, C. and Moore, D. (editors), SETAC Press, Pensacola, FL, USA.

- Baird, D.J., Burton, G.A., Culp, J.M. and Maltby, L. (2007). Summary and recommendations from a SETAC Pellston Workshop on in situ measures of ecological effects. *Integ. Environ. Assess. Manage.*, 3, 274-277.
- Baker, M.E. and King, R.S. (2010). A new method for detecting and interpreting biodiversity and ecological community thresholds. *Ecol. Evol.*, 1, 25-37.
- Bakke, T, Kallqvist, T., Ruus, A., Breedveld, G.D. and Hylland, K. (2010). Development of sediment quality criteria in Norway. *J. Soils Sediments*, 10, 172-178.
- Baldwin, D.S., Colloff, M.J., Rees, G.N., Chariton, A.A., Watson, G.O., Court, L.N., Hartley, D.M., Morgan, M.J., King, A.J., Wilson, J.S., Hodda, M, and Hardy, C.M. (2013). Impacts of inundation and drought on eukaryote biodiversity in semi-arid floodplain soils. *Mol. Ecol.*, 22, 1746-1758.
- Batley, G.E. and Simpson, S.L. (2009). Development of guidelines for ammonia in estuarine and marine systems. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 58, 1472-1476.
- Batley, G.E., Burton, G.A., Chapman, P.M. and Forbes, V.E. (2002). Uncertainties in sediment quality weight of evidence assessments. *Human Ecol. Risk Assess.*, 8, 1517-1547.
- Batley, G.E., Stahl, R.G., Babut, M.P., Bott, T.L., Clark, J.R., Field, L.J., Ho, K., Mount, D.R., Swartz, R.C. and Tessier, A. (2005). The scientific underpinnings of sediment quality guidelines. In: *Use of Sediment Quality Guidelines and Related Tools for the Assessment of Contaminated Sediments*, Wenning, R., Batley, G., Ingersoll, C. and Moore, D. (editors), SETAC Press, Pensacola, FL, USA.
- Bay, S.M., Ritter, K.J., Vidal-Dorsch, D.E. and Field, L.J. (2012) Comparison of national and regional sediment quality guidelines for classifying sediment toxicity in California. *Integr. Environ. Assess. Manage.*, 8, 597-609.
- Berry, W.J., Hansen, D.J., Mahony, J.D., Robson, D.L., Di Toro, D.M., Shipley, B.P., Rogers, B., Corbin, J.M. and Boothman, W.S. (1996). Predicting the toxicity of metal-spiked laboratory sediments using acid-volatile sulfide and interstitial water normalizations. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 15, 2067-2079
- Besser, J.M., Brumbaugh, W.G., May, T.W. and Ingersoll, C.G. (2003). Effects of organic amendments on the toxicity and bioavailability of cadmium and copper in spiked formulated sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 22, 805-815.
- Bik, H.M., Sung, W., De Ley, P., Baldwin, J.G., Sharma, J., Rocha-Olivares, A. and Thomas, W.K. (2012). Metagenetic community analysis of microbial eukaryotes illuminates biogeographic patterns in deep-sea and shallow water sediments. *Mol. Ecol.*, 21, 1048-1059.
- Boardman, G.D., Starbuck, S.M., Hudgins, D.B., Li, X. and Kuhn, D.D. (2004). Toxicity of ammonia to three marine fish and three marine invertebrates. *Environ. Toxicol.*, 19, 134-142.
- Borgmann, U. (2000). Methods for assessing the toxicological significance of metals in aquatic ecosystems: bioaccumulation-toxicity relationships, water concentrations and sediment spiking approaches. *Aquat. Ecosyst. Health Management*, 3, 277-289.
- Burgess, R.M., Berry, W.J., Mount, D.R. and Di Toro, D.M. (2013). Mechanistic sediment quality guidelines based on contaminant bioavailability: equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 32, 102-114.
- Burton, G.A., Baird, D.J., Culp, J.M. and Maltby, L. (2005). In situ-based effects measures: linking responses to ecological consequences in aquatic ecosystems. Allen Press, Lawrence, KS, USA.
- Campana, O., Blasco, J. and Simpson, S.L. (2013). Demonstrating the appropriateness of developing sediment quality guidelines based on sediment geochemical properties. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 47, 7483-7489.

- Campana, O., Spadaro, D.A., Blasco, J. and Simpson, S.L. (2012). Sublethal effects of copper to benthic invertebrates explained by changes in sediment properties and dietary exposure. *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 46, 6835-6842.
- Camusso, M., Polesello, S., Valsecchi, S., and Vignati, D.A.L. (2012). Importance of dietary uptake of trace elements in the benthic deposit-feeding *Lumbriculus variegatus*. *Trends Anal. Chem.* 36, 103-112.
- Carr, R.S. (1998). Marine and estuarine porewater toxicity testing. In: *Microscale Testing in Aquatic Toxicology: Advances, Techniques, and Practice*, Wells, P.G., Lee, K., and Blaise, C., (editors), CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL., pp. 523-538.
- Carr, R.S. and Chapman, D.C. (1995). Comparison of methods for conducting marine and estuarine sediment porewater toxicity tests - Extraction, storage, and handling techniques. *Archiv. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 28, 69-77.
- Carr, R.S. and Nipper, M.J. (2003). *Porewater Toxicity Testing*. Society of Environmental Toxicity and Chemistry (SETAC), Pensacola, FL, USA.
- Casado-Martinez, M., Smith, B.D., Luoma, S.N. and Rainbow, P.S. (2010). Metal toxicity in a sediment-dwelling polychaete: threshold body concentrations or overwhelming accumulation rates? *Environ. Pollut.*, 158, 3071-3076.
- Casado-Martinez, M.C., Beiras, R., Belzunce, M.J., Gonzalez-Castromil, M.A., Marin-Guirao, L., Postma, J.F., Riba, I. and DelValls, T.A. (2006). Interlaboratory assessment of marine bioassays to evaluate the environmental quality of coastal sediments in Spain. Whole sediment toxicity test using crustacean amphipods. *Ciencias Marinas*, 32, 149-157.
- Coissac, E., Riaz, T. and Puillandre, N. (2012). Bioinformatic challenges for DNA metabarcoding of plants and animals. *Mol. Ecol.*, 21, 1834-1847.
- CCME (2000). Canadian water quality guidelines for the protection of aquatic life: ammonia. Canadian Council of Ministers of the Environment, Ottawa, Canada.
- CCME (2002). Canadian Sediment Quality Guidelines for the Protection of Aquatic Life – Summary Tables Update 2002 ([www.ccme-publications/ceqg\\_rcqe.html](http://www.ccme-publications/ceqg_rcqe.html))
- Chapman, P.M., Allard, P.J. and Vigers, G.A. (1999). Development of sediment quality values for Hong Kong Special Administrative Region: A possible model for other jurisdictions. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 38, 161-169.
- Chapman, P.M., Wang, F.Y., Germano, J.D. and Batley, G.E. (2002b). Pore water testing and analysis: the good, the bad, and the ugly. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 44, 359-366.
- Chappie, D.J. and Burton, G.A. (2000). Applications of aquatic and sediment toxicity testing in situ. *Soil Sed. Contam.*, 9, 219-245.
- Chariton, A.A., Roach, A.C., Simpson, S.L. and Batley, G.E. (2010a). Influence of the choice of physical and chemistry variables on interpreting patterns of sediment contaminants and their relationships with estuarine macrobenthic communities. *Mar. Freshwater Res.*, 61, 1109-1122.
- Chariton, A., Court, L., Colloff, M., Hartley, D. and Hardy, C. (2010b). Ecological assessment of estuarine sediments by pyrosequencing eukaryotic ribosomal DNA. *Front. Ecol. Environ.*, 8, 233-238.
- Chariton, A.A., Maher, W.A. and Roach A.C. (2011). Recolonisation of estuarine benthic assemblages into translocated, metal-contaminated sediments. *Ecotox.*, 20, 706-18.
- Clarke, K.R. and Ainsworth, M. (1993). A method of linking multivariate community structure to environmental variables. *Mar. Ecol. Progr. Ser.*, 92, 205-219.
- Clarke, K.R. and Warwick, R.M. (1994). *Changes in marine communities: an approach to statistical analysis and interpretation*. Plymouth Marine Laboratory, Plymouth, UK.

- Clements, W.H. (1997). Ecological significance of endpoints used to assess sediment quality. In: *Ecological Risk Assessment of Contaminated Sediments*, Ingersoll, C.G., Dillon, T.M. and Biddinger, G.R. (editors), SETAC Press, Pensacola, FL.
- Cooper, D.C. and Morse, J.W. (1998). Extractability of metal sulfide minerals in acidic solutions: application to environmental studies of trace metal contamination within anoxic sediments, *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 32, 1076-1078.
- Cornelissen, G., Gustafsson, Ö., Bucheli, T.D., Jonker, M.T. O., Koelmans, A.A. and van Noort, P.C.M. (2005). Extensive sorption of organic compounds to black carbon, coal, and kerogen in sediments and soils: mechanisms and consequences for distribution, bioaccumulation, and biodegradation. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 39, 6881-6895.
- Cornelissen, G., Rigterink, H., Hulscher, D.E.M.T., Vrind, B.A. and Van Noort, P.C.M. (2001). A simple Tenax extraction method to determine the availability of sediment-sorbed organic compounds. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 20, 706-711.
- Costello, D.M., Burton, G.A., Hammerschmidt, C.R., Rogevich, E.C. and Schlegel, C.E. (2011). Nickel phase partitioning and toxicity in field-deployed sediments. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 45 5798-5805.
- Crane, M., Burton, G.A., Culp, J.M., Greenberg, M.S., Munkittrick, K.R., Ribeiro, R., Salazar, M.H. and St-Jean, S.D. (2007). Review of aquatic in situ approaches for stressor and effect diagnosis *Integ. Environ. Assess. Manag.*, 3, 234-245.
- Croteau, M.-N. and Luoma, S.N. (2009). Predicting dietborne metal toxicity from metal influxes. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 43, 4915-4921.
- Cutler, D.R., Edwards Jr, T.C., Beard, K.H., Cutler, A., Hess, K.T., Gibson, J., and Lawler, J.J. (2007). Random forests for classification in ecology. *Ecology*, 88, 2783-2792.
- Dabrin, A., Durand, C.L., Garric, J., Geffard, O., Ferrari, B.J.D. and Coquery, M. (2012). Coupling geochemical and biological approaches to assess the availability of cadmium in freshwater sediment. *Sci. Total Environ.*, 424, 308-315.
- Dauer, D.M. (1993). Biological criteria, environmental health and estuarine macrobenthic community structure. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 26: 249-257
- Deagle, B.E., Kirkwood, R. and Jarman, S.N. (2009). Analysis of Australian fur seal diet by pyrosequencing prey DNA in faeces. *Mol. Ecol.*, 18, 2022-2038.
- De Jonge, M., Blust, R. and Bervoets, L. (2010). The relation between acid volatile sulphides (AVSs) and metal accumulation in aquatic invertebrates: implications of feeding behavior and ecology. *Environ. Pollut.*, 158, 1381-1391.
- De Jonge, M., Teuchies, J., Meire, P., Blust, R. and Bervoets, L. (2012). The impact of increased oxygen conditions on metal-contaminated sediments part II: Effects on metal accumulation and toxicity in aquatic invertebrates. *Water Res.*, 46, 3387-3397.
- De Lange, H.J., Van Griethuysen, C. and Koelmans, A.A. (2008). Sampling method, storage and pretreatment of sediment affect AVS concentrations with consequences for bioassay responses. *Environ. Pollut.*, 151, 243-251.
- Den Besten, P.J., de Deckere, E., Babut, M.P., Power, B., DelValls, T.A., Zago, C., Oen, A.M.P. and Heise, S. (2003). *J. Soils Sediments*, 3, 144-162.
- Ding, Y.P., Landrum, P.F., You, J., Harwood, A.D. and Lydy, M.J. (2012). Use of solid phase microextraction to estimate toxicity: relating fiber concentrations to toxicity. part I. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 31, 2159-2167.
- Di Toro, D.M. (2013). The interplay of environmental toxicology and chemistry in the development of sediment quality criteria. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 32, 7-9.



- Di Toro, D.M., Mahony, J.D., Hansen, D.J., Scott, K.J., Carlson, A.R. and Ankley, G.T. (1992). Acid volatile sulfide predicts the acute toxicity of cadmium and nickel in sediments. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 26, 96-101.
- Di Toro, D.M., Mahony, J.D., Hansen, D.J., Scott, K.J., Hicks, M.B., Mayr, S.M. and Redmond, M.S. (1990) Toxicity of cadmium in sediments: The role of acid volatile sulfide. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 9, 1487-1502.
- Di Toro, D.M., McGrath, J.A. and Hansen, D.J. (2000). Technical basis for narcotic chemicals and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon criteria. I. Water and tissue. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 19:1971-1982.
- Di Toro, D.M., Zarba, C.S., Hansen, D.J., Berry, W.J., Swartz, R.C., Cowan, C.E., Pavlou, S.P., Allen, H.E., Thomas, N.A. and Paquin, P.R. (1991). Technical basis for establishing sediment quality for nonionic organic chemicals using equilibrium partitioning. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 10, 1541-1583.
- Driscoll, S.B.K. and Burgess, R.M. (2007) An overview of the development, status, and application of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks for PAH mixtures. *Human Ecol. Risk Assess.*, 13, 286-301.
- Ellis, N., Smith, S. and Pitcher C. (2012). Gradient forests: calculating importance gradients on physical predictors. *Ecology*, 93, 156-168.
- Environment Canada (1994). Guidance document on collection and preparation of sediments for physicochemical characterization and biological testing. Environment Canada Environmental Protection Series. Report EPS 1/RM/29, Ottawa, ON, Canada, 132 pp.
- Environment Canada (1998). Biological test method: Reference method for determining acute lethality of sediments to marine or estuarine amphipods. Method Development and Application Section, Environment Canada Report EPS 1/RM/35, Ottawa, ON, Canada.
- Eriksson Wiklund, A.-K. and Sundelin, B. (2002). Bioavailability of metals to the amphipod *Monoporeia affinis*: interactions with authigenic sulfides in urban brackish-water and freshwater sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 21, 1219-1228.
- EU (2006). Directive 2006/44/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council on the quality of fresh waters needing protection or improvement in order to support fish life.  
<http://www.europe.org.uk/europa/view/-/id/641/>
- EU WFD (2010). Technical guidance for deriving environmental quality standards. Draft version 5.0. Implementation Strategy for the Water Framework Directive (2000/60/EC).
- Fairey, R, Long, E.R., Roberts, C.A., Anderson, B.S., Phillips, B.M., Hunt, J.W., Puckett, H.R. and Wilson, C.J. (2001). An evaluation of methods for calculating mean sediment quality guideline quotients as indicators of contamination and acute toxicity to amphipods by chemical mixtures. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 20, 2276-2286.
- Field, L.J., MacDonald, D., Norton, S.B., Severn, C.G. and Ingersoll, C.G. (1999). Evaluating sediment chemistry and toxicity data using logistic regression modeling. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 18, 1311-1322.
- Field, L.J., MacDonald, D.D., Norton, S.B., Ingersoll, C.G., Severn, C.G. and Smorong, D., Lindskoog, R. (2002). Predicting amphipod toxicity from sediments using logistic regression models. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 9, 1993-2005.
- Gale, S.A., King, C.K. and Hyne, R.V. (2006). Chronic sublethal sediment toxicity testing using the estuarine amphipod, *Melita plumulosa* (Zeidler): evaluation using metal-spiked and field-contaminated sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 25, 1887-1898.
- Gallon, C., Hare, L. and Tessier, A. (2008). Surviving in anoxic surroundings: how burrowing aquatic insects create an oxic microhabitat. *J. North Am. Benthol. Soc.*, 27, 570-580.

- Geffard, O., His, E., Budzinski, H., Chiffolleau, J.F., Coynel, A. and Etcheber, H. (2004). Effects of storage method and duration on the toxicity of marine sediments to embryos of *Crassostrea gigas* oysters. *Environ. Pollut.*, 129, 457-465.
- Gray, J.S., Clarke, K.R., Warwick, R.M. and Hobbs G. (1990). Detection of initial effects of pollution on marine benthos, an example from the Ekofisk and Eldfisk oilfields, North Sea. *Mar. Ecol. Progr. Ser.*, 66, 285-299.
- Hawthorne S.B., Miller, D.J. and Kreitinger, J.P. (2006). Measurement of total polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon concentrations in sediments and toxic units used for estimating risk to benthic invertebrates at manufactured gas plant sites. *Environ. Toxicol Chem.*, 25, 287–296.
- Hewitt J.E., Anderson, M.J., Hickey, C., Kelly, S. and Thrush, S. (2009). Enhancing the ecological significance of sediment contamination guidelines through integration with community analysis. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 43, 2118-2123
- Hewitt, J.E., Anderson, M.J. and Thrush, S.F. (2005). Assessing and monitoring ecological community health in marine systems. *Ecol. App.*, 15, 942-953.
- Hickey, C.W. and Vickers, M.L. (1994). Toxicity of ammonia to nine native New Zealand freshwater invertebrate species. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 26, 292–298.
- Ho, K. T., Burgess, R. M., Pelletier, M. C., Serbst, J. R., Ryba, S. A., Cantwell, M. G., Kuhn, A. and Raczelowski, P. (2002). An overview of toxicant identification in sediments and dredged materials. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 44, 286-293.
- Ingersoll, C.G., Haverland, P.S., Brunson, E.L, Canfield, T.J., Dwyer, F.J., Henke, C.E., Kemble, N.E., Mount, D.R. and Fox, R.G.. (1996). Calculation and evaluation of sediment effect concentrations for amphipod *Hyaella azteca* and the midge *Chironomus riparius*. *J. Great Lakes Res.*, 22, 602–623.
- Johnston, E.L. and Roberts, D.A. (2009). Contaminants reduce the richness and evenness of marine communities: A review and meta-analysis. *Environ. Pollut.*, 157, 1745-1752.
- Jongman, R.H.G., Ter Braak, C.J.F. and van Tongeren, O.F.R. (1995). *Data Analysis in Community and Landscape Ecology*. Cambridge University Press, Melbourne, Australia
- King, C.K., Dowse, M.C. and Simpson S.L. (2010). Toxicity of metals to the bivalve *Tellina deltoidalis* and relationships between metal bioaccumulation and metal partitioning between seawater and marine sediments. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 58, 657–665.
- King, C.K., Dowse, M.C., Simpson S.L. and Jolley, D. (2004). An assessment of five Australian polychaetes and bivalves for use in whole-sediment toxicity tests: toxicity and accumulation of copper and zinc from water and sediment. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 47, 314-323.
- King, C.K., Gale, S.A. and Stauber, J.L. (2006b). Acute toxicity and bioaccumulation of aqueous and sediment-bound metals in the estuarine amphipod *Melita plumulosa*. *Environ. Toxicol.*, 21, 489-504.
- King, C.K., Simpson, S.L., Smith, S.V., Stauber, J.L. and Batley, G.E. (2005) Short-term accumulation of Cd and Cu from water, sediment and algae by the amphipod *Melita plumulosa* and the bivalve *Tellina deltoidalis*. *Mar. Ecol. Progr. Ser.*, 287, 177-188.
- Knudby, A., Brenning, A. and LeDrew, E. (2010). New approaches to modelling fish–habitat relationships. *Ecol. Mod.*, 221, 503-511.
- Koelmans, A.A., Jonker, M.T.O., Cornelissen, G., Bucheli, T.D., Van Noort, P.C.M. and Gustafsson, O. (2006). Black carbon: the reverse of its dark side. *Chemosphere*, 63, 365-377.
- Kohn, N.P., Word, J.Q., Niyogi, D.K., Ross, L.T., Dillon, T. and Moore, D.W. (1994). Acute toxicity of ammonia to four species of marine amphipod. *Mar. Environ. Res.*, 38, 1–15.

- Krassulya, N. (2001). Choice of methodology for marine pollution monitoring in intertidal soft-sediment communities. *CBM:s Skriftserie*, 3, 131-148.
- Krebs, C.J. (1994). *Ecology: the Experimental Analysis of Distribution and Abundance*. Harper Collins College Publishers, New York.
- Krebs, C.J. (1999). *Ecological Methodology*, 2nd Edition. Addison Wesley Longman, Sydney.
- Kwok, K.W.H., Bjorgesaeter, A., Leung, K.M.Y., Lui, G.C.S., Gray, J.S., Shin, P.K.S. and Lam, P.K.S. (2008). Deriving site-specific sediment quality guidelines for Hong Kong marine environments using field-based species sensitivity distributions. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 27, 226-234.
- Lambshead, P.J., Platt, H.M. and Shaw, K.M. (1983). The detection of differences among assemblages of marine benthic species based on an assessment of dominance and diversity. *J. Nat. Hist.*, 17, 859-874.
- Langston, W.J. and Pope, N.D. (1995). Determinants of TBT adsorption and desorption in estuarine sediments. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 31, 32-43.
- Legendre, P. and L. Legendre (2012). *Numerical Ecology*. 3rd edition. Elsevier Science, Oxford, U.K..
- Leppänen, H. and Kukkonen, V.K., 2000. Effect of sediment-chemical contact time on availability of sediment-associated pyrene and benzo[a]pyrene to oligochaete worms and semipermeable membrane devices. *Aquatic Toxicol.*, 49, 227-241.
- Leung, K.M.Y., Bjorgesaeter, A., Gray, J.S., Li, W.K., Liu, G.C.S., Wang, Y. and Lam, P.K.S. (2005). The sediment quality guidelines from field-based species sensitivity distributions. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 39, 5148-5156.
- Liber, K., Goodfellow, W., Green, A.; Clements, W.H., den Besten, P.J., Galloway, T.S., Gerhardt, A. and Simpson, S.L. (2007). In situ-based effects measures: considerations for improving methods and approaches. *Integ. Environ. Assess. Manage.*, 3, 246-257.
- Lindgarth, M. and Hoskins, M. (2001). Patterns of distribution of macro-fauna in different types of estuarine, soft sediment habitats adjacent to urban and non-urban areas. *Estuar. Coastal Shelf Sci.*, 52, 363-373.
- Long, E.R., Ingersoll, C.G. and MacDonald, D.D. (2006). Calculation and uses of mean sediment quality guideline quotients: a critical review. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 40, 1726-1736.
- Long, .E.R., MacDonald, D.D., Smith, S.L. and Calder, F.D. (1995). Incidence of adverse effects within ranges of chemical concentrations in marine and estuarine sediments. *Environ. Manag.*, 19, 81-97.
- Long, E.R. and Morgan, L.G. (1990). The potential for biological effects of sediment-sorbed contaminants tested in the National Status and Trends Program. NOAA Technical Memorandum, NOS OMA 52, Seattle, Washington, USA.
- Long, E.R. and MacDonald, D.D. (1998). Recommended use of empirically derived sediment quality guidelines for marine and estuarine ecosystems. *Hum. Ecol. Risk Assess.*, 4, 1019-39.
- Lui, C.S.G., Bjørgesæter, A. and Leung K.M.Y. (2013). Deriving field-based sediment quality guidelines from the relationship between species density and contaminant level using a novel nonparametric empirical Bayesian approach. *Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res.* (in press)
- Luoma, S.N. and Rainbow, P. (2008). *Metal Accumulation in Aquatic Environments*, Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
- Luoma, S.N. and Rainbow, P.S. (2005). Why is metal bioaccumulation so variable? Biodynamics as a unifying concept. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 39, 1921-1931.
- MacDonald, D.D., Carr, R.S., Calder, F.D., Long, E.R. and Ingersoll, C.G. (1996). Development and evaluation of sediment quality guidelines for Florida coastal waters. *Ecotoxicol.*, 5, 253-278.

- MacDonald, D.D., Ingersoll, C.G. and Berger, T.A. (2000). Development and evaluation of consensus-based sediment quality guidelines for freshwater ecosystems. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 39, 20-31.
- Mackenbach, E.M., Jing, Y., Mills, M.A., Landrum, P.F. and Lydy, M.J. (2012). Application of a Tenax model to assess bioavailability of PCBs in field sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 31, 2210-2216.
- MacRae, J.D. and Hall, K.J. (1998). Comparison of methods used to determine the availability of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in marine sediment. *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 32, 3809-3815.
- Mann, R.M., Hyne, R.V., Simandjuntak, D.L. and Simpson, S.L. (2010). A rapid amphipod reproduction test for sediment quality assessment: In-situ bioassays do not replicate laboratory bioassays. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 29, 2566-2574.
- Mann, R.M., Hyne, R.V., Spadaro, D.A. and Simpson, S.L. (2009). Development and application of a rapid amphipod reproduction test for sediment quality assessment. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 28, 1244–1254.
- Margulies, M., Egholm, M., Altman, W., Attiya, S., Bader, J., Bemben, L., Berka, J., Braverman, M., Chen, Y., Chen, Z., Dewell, S., Du, L., Fierro, J., Gomes, X., Godwin, B., He, W., Helgesen, S., Ho, C., Irzyk, G., Jando, S., Alenquer, M., Jarvie, T., Jirage, K., Kim, J., Knight, J., Lanza, J., Leamon, J., Lefkowitz, S., Lei, M., Li, J., Lohman, K., Lu, H., Makhijani, V., McDade, K., McKenna, M., Myers, E., Nickerson, E., Nobile, J., Plant, R., Puc, B., Ronan, M., Roth, G., Sarkis, G., Simons, J., Simpson, J., Srinivasan, M., Tartaro, K., Tomasz, A., Vogt, K., Volkmer, G., Wang, S., Wang, Y., Weiner, M., Yu, P., Begley, R., and Rothberg, J. (2005). Genome sequencing in microfabricated high-density picolitre reactors. *Nature*, 437, 376 - 380.
- Maruya, K.A., Landrum, P.F., Burgess, R.M. and Shine, J.P. (2010). Incorporating contaminant bioavailability into sediment quality assessment frameworks. *Integ. Environ. Assess. Manage.*, 8, 659–673.
- Maruya, K.A., Zeng, E.Y., Tsukada, D. and Bay, S.M. (2009). A passive sampler based on solid-phase microextraction for quantifying hydrophobic organic contaminants in sediment pore water. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 28, 733–740.
- McArdle, B.H. and Anderson, M.J. (2004). Variance heterogeneity, transformations, and models of species abundance: a cautionary tale. *Can. J. Fish. Aquatic Sci.*, 61, 1294-1302.
- Moore, D.W., Baudo, R., Conder, J.M., Landrum, P.F., McFarland, V.A., Meador, J.P. and Word, J.Q., (2005). Bioaccumulation in the assessment of sediment quality: uncertainty and potential application, in: *Use of Sediment Quality Guidelines and Related Tools for the Assessment of Contaminated Sediments*, Wenning, R.J., Batley, G.E., Ingersoll, C.G., Moore, D.W., (editors), SETAC Press, Pensacola, FL, USA.
- Moore, D.W., Bridges, T.S., Gray, B.R. and Duke, B.M. (1997). Risk of ammonia toxicity during sediment bioassays with the estuarine amphipod *Leptocheirus plumulosus*. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 16, 1020-1027.
- Mudroch, A. and Azcue, J.M. (1995). *Manual of Aquatic Sediment Sampling*, Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, FL, USA.
- Mudroch, A., Azcue, J.M. and Mudroch, P. (1997). *Manual of physico-chemical analysis of aquatic sediments*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, USA.
- NAGD (2009). *National Assessment Guidelines for Dredging*, Commonwealth of Australia, Canberra, ACT.
- Newman, M.C. (1998). *Fundamentals of Ecotoxicology*. Ann Arbor Press, Chelsea, MI.
- Naylor, C.; Davison, W., Motelica-Heino, M., Van Den Berg, G.A. and Van Der Heijdt, L.M. (2004). Simultaneous release of sulfide with Fe, Mn, Ni and Zn in marine harbour sediment measured using a combined metal/sulfide DGT probe. *Sci. Tot. Environ.*, 328, 275–286.
- Offermann, K., Matthäi, A. and Ahlf, W. (2009). Assessing the importance of dietborne cadmium and particle characteristics on bioavailability and bioaccumulation in the nematode *Caenorhabditis elegans*. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 28, 1149–1158.

- Panther, J.G., Stewart, R.R., Teasdale, P.R., Bennett, W.W., Welsh, D.T. and Zhao, H. (2013). Titanium dioxide-based DGT for measuring dissolved As (V), V (V), Sb (V), Mo (VI) and W (VI) in water. *Talanta*, 105, 80-86.
- Pearson, T.H. and Rosenberg, R. (1978). Macrobenthic succession in relation to organic enrichment and pollution of the marine environment. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Ann. Rev.*, 16, 229-311
- Perez-Landa, V. and Simpson, S.L. (2010). A rapid life-cycle test with the epibenthic copepod *Nitocra spinipes* for sediment toxicity assessment. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.* (submitted).
- Perez-Landa, V. and Simpson, S.L. (2011). A short life-cycle test with the epibenthic copepod *Nitocra spinipes* for sediment toxicity assessment. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 30, 1430-1439.
- Peterson, G.S., Ankley, G.T. and Leonard, E.N. (1996).. Effect of bioturbation on metal-sulfide oxidation in surficial freshwater sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 15, 2147-2155.
- Pettigrove, V. and Hoffmann, A. (2005). A field-based microcosm method to assess the effects of polluted urban stream sediments on aquatic macroinvertebrates. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 24, 170-180.
- Pianka, E.R. (1970). On r- and k- selection. *Amer. Natural.*, 104, 592-597.
- Pielou, E.C. (1966). Shannon's formulae as mean of species diversity its use and misuses. *Amer. Natural.*, 100, 463-465.
- Qui, X. and Davis, J.W. (2004). Environmental bioavailability of hydrophobic organochlorines in sediments - A review. *Remediation*, 55-84.
- Rainbow, P.S. (2007). Trace metal bioaccumulation: Models, metabolic availability and toxicity. *Environ. Int.*, 33, 576-582.
- Rand, G.M. and Petrocelli, S.R. (1985). *Fundamentals of Aquatic Toxicology*. Hemisphere, Washington, DC, USA
- Rickard, D. and Morse, J.W. (2005) Acid volatile sulfide (AVS). *Mar. Chem.*, 97, 141-197.
- Roach, A.C., Jones, A.R. and Murray, A. (2000). Using benthic recruitment to assess the significance of contaminated sediments: the influence of taxonomic resolution. *Environ. Pollut.*, 112, 1-13.
- Rogers, J.A. and Hsu, J.C. (2001). Multiple comparisons of biodiversity. *Biometric. J.*, 43, 617-625.
- Schubauer-Berigan, M.K. and G.T. Ankley. (1991). The contribution of ammonia, metals and nonpolar organic compounds to the toxicity of sediment interstitial water from an Illinois river tributary. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 10, 925-939.
- SERDP/ESTCP (2008). SERDP and ESTCP Expert Panel Workshop on Research and Development Needs for Understanding and Assessing the Bioavailability of Contaminants in Soils and Sediments. Washington, D.C.: Strategic Environmental Research and Development Program and the Environmental Security Technology Certification Program. [http://serdp-estcp.org/content/download/8049/99405/version/1/file/Bioavailability\\_Wkshp\\_Nov\\_2008.pdf](http://serdp-estcp.org/content/download/8049/99405/version/1/file/Bioavailability_Wkshp_Nov_2008.pdf).
- SFT (2007). Background document Part B for: Guidelines for classification of environmental quality in fjords and coastal areas: classification of metals and organic contaminants in water and sediment and Guideline for risk assessment of contaminated sediment. Norwegian Pollution Control Authority, SFT TA-2231/2007 (translation from Norwegian).
- Shannon C.E. and Weaver W. (1963). *The Mathematical Theory of Communication*. University of Illinois Press, Urbana, Illinois.
- Shokralla, S., Spall, J.L., Gibson, J.F. and Hajibabaei, M. (2012). Next-generation sequencing technologies for environmental DNA research. *Mol. Ecol.*, 21, 1794-180

- Simpson, S.L. (2005). An exposure calculating copper effect concentrations in sediments with varying copper binding properties: a synthesis. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 39, 7089-7096.
- Simpson, S.L. and Batley, G.E. (2003). Disturbances to metal partitioning during toxicity testing of iron(II)-rich porewaters and whole sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 22, 424-432.
- Simpson, S.L. and Batley, G.E. (2007). Predicting metal toxicity in sediments: A critique of current approaches. *Integr. Environ. Assess. Manag.*, 3, 18-31.
- Simpson, S.L. and King, C.K. (2005). Exposure-pathway models explain causality in whole-sediment toxicity tests. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 39, 837-843.
- Simpson, S.L. and Spadaro, D.A. (2011). Performance and sensitivity of rapid sublethal sediment toxicity tests with the amphipod *Melita plumulosa* and copepod *Nitocra spinipes* *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 30, 2326-2334.
- Simpson, S.L., Apte, S.C. and Batley, G.E. (1998). Effect of short term resuspension events of trace metals speciation in polluted anoxic sediments. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 32, 620-625.
- Simpson, S.L., Apte, S.C. and Batley, G.E., (2000). Effect of short-term resuspension events on the oxidation of cadmium, lead and zinc sulfide phases in anoxic sediments. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 34, 4533-4537.
- Simpson, S.L., Batley, G.E., Chariton, A.A., Stauber, J.L., King, C.K., Chapman, J.C., Hyne, R.V., Gale, S.A., Roach, A.C. and Maher, W.A. (2005). Handbook for Sediment Quality Assessment (CSIRO: Bangor, NSW). ISBN 0-643-09197-1.
- Simpson, S.L., Batley, G.E., Hamilton, I. and Spadaro, D.A. (2011). Guidelines for copper in sediments with varying properties. *Chemosphere*, 85, 1487-1495.
- Simpson, S.L., Micevska, T., Adams, M.S., Stone, A. and Maher, W. (2007). Establishing cause-effect relationships in PAH and hydrocarbon contaminated sediments using the benthic marine alga, *Entomoneis cf punctulata*. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 26, 163-170.
- Simpson, S.L. and Spadaro, D.A. (2013). Incorporating bioavailability into management limits for copper and zinc in sediments contaminated by antifouling paint and aquaculture. *Chemosphere*, 93, 2499-2506.
- Simpson, S.L., Ward, D., Strom, D. and Jolley, D.F. (2012b). Oxidation of acid-volatile sulfide in surface sediments increases the release and toxicity of copper to the benthic amphipod *Melita plumulosa*. *Chemosphere*, 88, 953-961.
- Simpson, S.L., Yverneau, H., Cremazy, A., Jarolimek, C., Price, H.L. and Jolley, D.F. (2012a). DGT-induced copper flux predicts bioaccumulation and toxicity to bivalves in sediments with varying properties. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 46, 9038-9046.
- Sims, W.G. and Moore, D.W. (1995). Risk of pore water ammonia toxicity in dredged material bioassays. US Army Corps of Engineers Waterways Experiment Station Miscellaneous Paper D-95-3, Vicksburg, MS, USA.
- Smith, S.L., MacDonald, D.D., Keenleyside, K.A., Ingersoll, C.G. and Field, L.J. (1996). A preliminary evaluation of sediment quality assessment values for freshwater ecosystems. *J. Great Lakes Res.*, 22, 624-638.
- Spadaro, D.A., Micevska, T. and Simpson, S.L. (2008). Effect of nutrition on toxicity of contaminants to the epibenthic amphipod, *Melita plumulosa*. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 55, 593-602.
- Strom D., Simpson, S.L., Batley, G.E. and Jolley, D.F. (2011). The influence of sediment particle size and organic carbon on toxicity of copper to benthic invertebrates in oxic/sub-oxic surface sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 30, 1599-1610.

- Stronkhorst, J., Schot, M.E., Dubbeldam, M.C. and Ho, K.T. (2003). A toxicity identification evaluation of silty marine harbor sediments to characterize persistent and non-persistent constituents. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 46, 56-64.
- Swartz, R.C., Ferraro, S.P., Lamberson, J.O., Cole, F.A., Ozretich, R. J., Boese, B.L., Schults, D.W., Behrenfeld, M. and Ankley, G.T. (1997). Photoactivation and toxicity of mixture of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon compounds in marine sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 16, 2151-2157.
- Swartz, R.C., Schults, D.W., Ozretich, R.J., Lamberson, J.O., Cole, F.A., DeWitt, T.H., Redmond, M.S. and Ferraro, S.P. (1995). Swartz, R.C., Schults, D.W., Ozretich, R.J., Lamberson, J.O., Cole, ment contaminated with polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 14, 1977-1987.
- Taberlet, P., Coissac, E., Pompanon, F., Brochmann, C. and Willerslev, E. (2012). Towards next-generation biodiversity assessment using DNA metabarcoding. *Mol. Ecol.* 21, 2045-2050.
- Tang, C.Q., Leasi, F., Obertegger, U., Kieneke, A., Barraclough, T.G. and Fontaneto, D. (2012). The widely used small subunit 18S rDNA molecule greatly underestimates true diversity in biodiversity surveys of the meiofauna. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.*, 109, 16208-16212.
- Tankere-Muller, S., Zhang, H., Davison, W., Finke, N., Larsen, O., Stahl, H. and Glud, R.N. (2006). Fine scale remobilisation of Fe, Mn, Co, Ni, Cu and Cd in contaminated marine sediment. *Mar. Chem.*, 106, 192–207.
- Ter Braak, C.J.F. and Verdonschot, P.F.M. (1995). Canonical correspondence analysis and related multivariate methods in aquatic ecology. *Aquat. Sci.*, 57, 253-287.
- Tessier, A., Campbell, P.G.C., Auclair, J.C. and Bisson, M. (1984). Relationship between trace metal partitioning in sediments and their accumulation in the tissues of the freshwater mollusc *Elliptio complanata* in a mining area. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.*, 41, 1463-1472.
- Teuchies, J., De Jonge, M.M.P., Blust, R. Bervoets, L. (2012). Can acid volatile sulfides influence metal concentrations in the macrophyte *Myriophyllum aquaticum*? *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 46, 9129-9137.
- Thrush, S.F., Hewitt, J.E., Hickey, C.W. and Kelly, S. (2008). Multiple stressor effects identified from species abundance distributions: interactions between urban contaminants and species habitat relationships. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.*, 366, 160–168.
- Tsutsumi, H. (1990). Population persistence of *Capitella* sp. (Polychaeta; Capitellidae) on a mud flat subject to environmental disturbance by organic enrichment. *Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser.*, 63, 147-156.
- Turner, A. and Hallett, L. (2012). Bioaccessibility of zinc in estuarine sediment contaminated by tire wear particles. *Wat. Air Soil Pollut.*, 223, 4889-4894.
- USEPA (1989). Ambient water quality criteria for ammonia (saltwater). U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Office of Water Report EPA 440/5-88-004, Washington, DC., USA.
- USEPA (1994). Methods for measuring the toxicity of sediment-associated contaminants with estuarine and marine amphipods. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Report EPA-600/R-94/025, Narragansett, RI, USA.
- USEPA (2000a). Bioaccumulation testing and interpretation for the purpose of sediment quality assessment: Status and needs. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Report Office of Water Report EPA-823-R-00-002, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2000b). Appendix to bioaccumulation and testing interpretation for the purposes of sediment quality assessment: Status and needs: Chemical-specific summary tables. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Office of Water Report EPA-823-R-00-002, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2001). Methods for collection, storage and manipulation of sediments for chemical and toxicological analyses: Technical manual. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water Report EPA 823-B-01-002, Washington, DC, USA.

- USEPA (2003a.) Technical basis for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: nonionic organics. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-014, Washington, DC, USA.)
- USEPA (2003b). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Endrin. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-009. Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2003c). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Dieldrin. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-010., Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2003d). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: PAH mixtures. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-013, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2005). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Metal mixtures (cadmium, copper, lead, nickel, silver and zinc). U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-011, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2007). Sediment toxicity identification evaluation (TIE) phases I, II, and III guidance Document. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA/600/R-07/080, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2008). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Compendium of tier 2 values for non-ionic organics. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development EPA-600-R-02-016, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2012). Equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Procedures for the determination of the freely dissolved interstitial water concentrations of nonionic organics. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-012, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA/USACE (1998). Evaluation of dredged material proposed for discharge in waters of the U.S. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency/Army Corps of Engineers Testing Manual EPA-823-B-98-004, Washington, DC, USA.
- Vinturella, A.E., Burgess, R.M., Coull, B.A., Thompson, K.M. and Shine, J.P. (2004). The use of passive samplers to mimic uptake of PAHs by benthic polychaetes. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 38, 1154-1160.
- Voparil, I.M. and Mayer, L.M. (2004). Commercially available chemicals that mimic a deposit feeder's (*Arenicola marina*) digestive solubilization of lipids. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 38, 4334-4339.
- Ward, D., Perez-Landa, V., Simpson, S.L. and Jolley, D.F. (2011). An assessment of three harpacticoid copepod species for use in rapid life-cycle tests. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 61, 414-425.
- Warwick, R.M. (2001). Evidence for the effects of metal contamination on the intertidal macrobenthic assemblages of the Fal Estuary. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 42, 145-148.
- Warwick, R.M. and Clarke, K.R. (1991). A comparison of some methods for detecting pollution effects on marine benthic communities. *J. Mar. Biol. Assoc. U.K.*, 71, 225-244.
- Weston, D.P. (1990). Quantitative examination of macrobenthic community changes along an organic enrichment gradient. *Mar. Ecol. Progr. Ser.*, 61, 233-244.
- Whiteman, F.W., Ankley, G.T., Kahl, M.D., Rau, D.M. and Balcer, M.D. (1996). Evaluation of interstitial water as a route of exposure for ammonia in sediment tests with benthic macroinvertebrates. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 15, 794-801.



Zhang, H., Davison, W., Miller, S. And Tych, W. (1995). In situ high resolution measurements of fluxes of Ni, Cu, Fe, and Mn and concentrations of Zn and Cd in porewaters by DGT. *Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta*, 59, 4181–4192.

# Appendix. Revision and Derivation of Guideline and SQG-High Values for Contaminants

## A1. Introduction

In general, the interim SQG values adopted as the SQGVs and the interim upper values (ISQG-High) have been useful, given their intended purpose. These values were based primarily on the effect range low (ERL) and effect range mean (ERM) values from Long et al. (1995), and to a lesser extent empirical effects data from MacDonald et al. (1996) and (Chapman et al., 1999). In the context of Australia and New Zealand, the study commissioned by the Auckland Regional Council to develop regional models of benthic ecosystem health (Anderson et al., 2006) indicated biological effects were occurring when these thresholds were exceeded. Likewise, studies of toxicity along a concentration gradient of trace metals, including Pb, Zn, Cd, and Cu, in the sediments, have demonstrated toxicity at metal concentrations approaching the SQG trigger values (Mann et al., 2009; Simpson and Spadaro, 2011).

While the interim SQGs have been generally useful, the application of these and other guidelines to assessments in Australia, New Zealand and other nations has indicated that it would be better to use the threshold effect level (TEL) and probably effects level (PEL) values than the ERL/ERM values for organic contaminants (MacDonald et al. 2000; CCME, 2002). Therefore, in the SQG revision, the TEL and PEL values are used as the SQGV and upper guideline values for most of the organic contaminants. The guideline for tributyltin (TBT) has been revised based on published reviews of effects data and new approaches. For non-ionic organic chemicals in sediment, the ESB approach developed by the USEPA (2003-2012) represents the best current approach for considering the potential effects of individual and mixtures of non-ionic organic contaminants. Consequently, for these organic contaminants, including PAHs, dieldrin, and endrin, the guideline values have been revised and the ESB approach is recommended. The basis for the default values in Table 2 is described below. Total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPHs) are common sediment contaminants and there are now sufficient effects data to derive a SQGV. For metals in anoxic sediments, the approach for metal mixtures (Ag, Cd, Cu, Pb, Ni, and Zn) based on AVS-SEM theory and the ESB approaches are reviewed and the scope and limitations discussed. For metals in oxic/suboxic sediments, possible procedures for the modification of SQGVs for metals that consider the influence of sediment type are described, using copper as an example.

## A2. Revision of Guideline Values for Tributyltin

The proposed revisions of the SQGV and SQG-high values for TBT are based on reviews of effects data and proposed ESB approaches (USEPA, 2003b,c). Tributyltin is a biocide used in antifouling coatings applied to the hulls of coastal and ocean-going boats (USEPA, 2003d). It is now banned on small vessels, but contamination continues in many ports and harbours in Australia as a result of leaching from large commercial ships. Tributyltin is highly toxic to a wide range of aquatic species and is linked to imposex in snails and immuno-suppression in bivalves. TBT is hydrophobic and adsorbs strongly to the organic carbon in sediments, and is relatively persistent, with a half-life of years.

The USEPA criteria for acute (FAV) and chronic (FCV) protection from effects of TBT are 460 ng TBT/L (acute) and 72 ng TBT/L (chronic) in freshwater, and 420 ng TBT/L (acute) and 7.4 ng TBT/L (chronic) in saltwater (USEPA, 2003d). These criteria are based on an extensive review of effects to aquatic organisms (USEPA, 2003d). The toxic effects of TBT are considered to occur due to exposure of organisms to TBT in the dissolved phases.

Stronkhorst et al. (2002) investigated the toxicity of TBT to the burrowing amphipod *Corophium volutator* in 10-d acute toxicity tests and to the heart urchin *Echinocardium cordatum* in 14-d and 28-d tests. For *E. cordatum* and *C. volutator*, the LC50s for pore water (222 and 329 ng Sn/L) equated to toxicity at a TBT concentration in the sediment (2% organic carbon) with LC50s for *E. cordatum* and *C. volutator* of 1,600 and 2,200 µg Sn/kg dry weight, respectively. Meador (2000a) recommends a criterion of 60 µg Sn/kg (1% OC) based on effects to salmonoids.

The partitioning of TBT between the dissolved and particulate phases will depend on the sediment properties, particularly the organic carbon concentration (Langston et al., 1995; Meador et al., 1997; Meador, 2000b; Hoch et al., 2000; Burton et al., 2005). The partitioning of TBT between the dissolved phase and particulate organic carbon (OC) can be described by a partition coefficient,  $K_{oc}$  (L/kg) = [TBT-sediment, mg/kg]/[TBT-dissolved, mg/L], where  $f_{oc}$  is the fraction of OC in the sediments. Note that the fraction of sediment OC should be determined by TOC analysis, rather than loss-on-ignition.  $K_{oc}$  values vary greatly in sediments, but are typically of the order of 3000 L/kg (1% OC) (Langston and Pope, 1995; Berg et al., 2001; Burton et al., 2005). Based on a FCV of 7.4 ng TBT/L, a sediment criterion of 22 µg TBT/kg (1% OC) or 9 µg Sn/kg is calculated.

There is no scientific basis for modifying the ISQG-High value and it is proposed that this value should remain unchanged.

### **SQGV and SQG-high value for TBT:**

For all sediments:

SQGV = 9 µg Sn/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

SQG-High = 70 µg Sn/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

## A3. Revision of Guideline Values for Total PAHs and the Equilibrium Sediment Benchmark (ESB) Approach for PAH Mixtures

This suggested revision is based on: (i) reviews and modelling of effects data for PAHs in sediments (Di Toro et al., 2000a,b; Di Toro and McGrath, 2000), and (ii) the equilibrium sediment benchmark (ESB) approach developed and proposed by the USEPA for mixtures of PAHs (USEPA, 2003a; Driscoll and Burgess, 2007; USEPA, 2012).

Based on extensive review and modelling of effects data, Di Toro and McGrath (2000) proposed a final acute value (FAV) and final chronic value (FCV) for total PAHs of 29 and 5.7  $\mu\text{mol/g OC}$  respectively. The scientific basis for these threshold values is considered to be an improvement on the interim SQGV and ISQG-high values (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000) and it is recommended that the SQGV and SQG-high value be set respectively as 10 and 50 mg/kg total PAHs, normalised to 1% organic carbon (the conversion from mole to mass being based on the PAHs having an average molecular weight of 173, the conversion factor used by Di Toro and McGrath (2000)).

When comparing the total PAH concentration with the SQGV and SQG-high, the 18 parent PAHs should be included: naphthalene, acenaphthylene, acenaphthene, fluorene, anthracene, phenanthrene, fluoranthene, pyrene, benzo[a]anthracene, chrysene, benzo(a)pyrene, perylene, benzo(b)fluoranthene, benzo(k)-fluoranthene, benzo(e)pyrene, benzo(ghi)perylene, dibenz(a,h)anthracene, and indeno(1,2,3-cd)pyrene.

The total PAH concentration is normalised to 1% organic carbon (OC) is undertaken within the limits of 0.2 to 10%. Thus if a sediment has (i) 2% OC, the '1% normalised' concentration would be the measured concentration divided by 2, (ii) 0.5% OC, then the 1% normalised value is the measured value divided by 0.5, (iii) 0.15% OC, then the 1% normalised value is the measured value divided by the lower limit of 0.2.

The guideline values for individual PAHs were removed because, for the majority of assessments, the concentration of total PAHs represents contributions from a large number of individual PAHs, with each being a small percentage of the total. While it is recognised that the toxicities of the individual PAHs differ significantly, it is considered unlikely that an individual PAH will, by itself, either dominate the total PAHs concentration or the Chemistry LOE within the WOE framework. Consequently the use of total PAH concentrations is considered suitable for most assessments. Where PAHs are likely to be the dominant COPCs in the sediments, the use of ESB approach is desirable, and includes 16 alkylated PAHs (Table A2.1).

The ESB for PAH mixtures is based on narcosis theory (USEPA, 2003a; Driscoll and Burgess, 2007; USEPA, 2011). The toxicities of mixtures of narcotic chemicals in water are considered to be approximately additive, and the combined toxic contribution of all PAHs in the mixture is the sum the effects predicted for each PAH. The EqP model is based on sediment organic carbon (OC) being the major PAH-binding phase in the sediments. The EqP model holds that non-ionic chemicals, such as PAHs, in sediment, partition between sediment OC, pore water and benthic organisms. At equilibrium, if the concentration in any one phase is known, then the concentrations in the others can be predicted. It was demonstrated that biological responses of benthic organisms to non-ionic organic chemicals in sediments are different across sediments when the sediment concentrations are expressed on a dry weight basis, but similar when expressed on an organic carbon basis (mg/kg OC). Similar responses were also observed across sediments when porewater concentrations were used to normalise bioavailability.

The ESB approach calculates an FCV concentration for each specific PAH in sediment ( $C_{OC,PAH_i,FCV_i}$ , mg/kg OC). The ESB for total PAHs is then calculated as the sum of the quotients of the 34 individual PAHs in a specific sediment divided by the  $C_{OC,PAH_i,FCV_i}$  of each individual PAH. This sum is termed the ESB Toxic Unit ( $\sum \text{ESBTU}_{FCV}$ ). For freshwater or saltwater sediments, if  $\sum \text{ESBTU}_{FCV} < 1.0$  then no effects from PAHs are expected, and if the  $\sum \text{ESBTU}_{FCV} > 1.0$ , then sensitive benthic organisms may be unacceptably affected.

Advances have been made in the ESB approach to better consider the forms of carbon that exist in sediments and influence the partitioning of the organics. Black carbon (which includes pyrogenic carbon,

soot, and coal particles) has been shown to be an important phase for binding hydrophobic organic contaminants (e.g. PAHs) in sediments. Provided suitable site-specific data are available on the form and concentration of black carbon (BC) and the influence of the BC concentration on the PAH-BC partition coefficients, then site-specific ESBs may be utilised that account for adsorption of PAHs onto BC and other forms of sediment organic carbon (Driscoll and Burgess, 2007). The ESB model now includes a two-carbon model, incorporating black carbon along with organic carbon, and is now available for making EqP-based predictions (US EPA, 2012). However, the partition coefficients for black carbon are often difficult to parameterise. Thus where significant amounts of black carbon are suspected to be present in sediments, measurements of interstitial water (porewater) PAH concentrations directly, or through passive sampling, is recommended.

For PAHs, the hydrocarbon narcosis risk model requires the measurement on sediment of 18 parent PAHs and 16 groups of prominent C1 to C4 alkyl PAH derivatives (so-called 34 PAHs) (Table A2.1). This creates a challenge for implementing the ESB approach is the analytical measurement of the 34 PAHs specified in the ESB document (USEPA, 2003a). There are quantification challenges for the alkyl compounds, as there are not standards for all compounds. The default approach is to assume that the response factors for the alkylated compounds are the same as the parents. Consequently, not many laboratories would analyse these routinely.

The interim Guidelines (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000) considered the contribution of only 16 non-substituted PAHs. However, the ESB approach does allow for assessments that measure fewer than 34 PAHs through the use of an uncertainty factor. Although this greatly increases the uncertainty, it is based on a 95% confidence level and can be considered conservative.

The USEPA have developed an Excel-based spreadsheet as an 'autocalculator' for the PAH ESBs (Mount, 2009, personal communication). Based on measured concentrations, this calculates the acute and chronic 'potency ratio' for measurement in waters or sediments. The calculations include an 'alkylation multiplier' to account for alkylated PAHs when parent PAHs were all that was measured. The reason for this is that if the source of PAHs is petroleum, the vast majority of the PAH potency is in the alkylated compounds, so analyses that measure only parent PAHs grossly underestimate the overall potency (USEPA, 2003a; Hawthorne et al., 2006).

While an ESB-based approach may be suitable for assessing possible toxicological effects due to PAH mixtures, it increases the complexity of the assessment and a single effects threshold based on the total PAH concentration is currently recommended for general guideline use. The proposed guideline should be applied to the sum of the concentrations of the 16 individual PAHs specified in the interim Guidelines (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000).

Validation of model predictions is always desirable. The direct measurements of non-ionic organic contaminant concentrations in pore waters using passive samplers is increasingly being used to validate the EqP model predictions, calculation of their toxic units, and derivation of site-specific ESBs (Maruya et al., 2009; 2010).

**SQGV and SQG-high value for total PAHs:**

For all sediment types:

SQGV = 10 mg for total PAHs/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

SQG-High = 50 mg for total PAHs/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

where total PAHs = the sum of the 16 individual non-alkylated PAHs

(also known as unsubstituted or parent PAHs - listed in ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000)

In cases where the assessment allows for the measurement of both parent and alkylated (substituted) PAHs, the ESB benchmark approach may be applied (USEPA, 2003a; Driscoll and Burgess, 2007).

**ESB<sub>PAHs</sub> (applied as described in USEPA, 2003a):**

For freshwater or marine sediments for 34 individual PAHs:

$\sum \text{ESBTU}_{\text{FCV}} < 1.0$  then no effects from PAHs are expected

$\sum \text{ESBTU}_{\text{FCV}} > 1.0$ , then sensitive benthic organisms may be unacceptably affected.

The uncertainty factor should be applied when fewer than 34 PAHs are measured.

**Table A2.1. Thirty-four individual PAHs to be analysed when applying the ESB**

<b>1</b>	Naphthalene	<b>19</b>	Fluoranthene
<b>2</b>	2-Methylnaphthalene	<b>20</b>	Pyrene
<b>3</b>	1-Methylnaphthalene	<b>21</b>	C1 Fluoranthenes/pyrenes
<b>4</b>	C2 Naphthalenes	<b>22</b>	Benz[a]anthracene
<b>5</b>	C3 Naphthalenes	<b>23</b>	Chrysene
<b>6</b>	C4 Naphthalenes	<b>24</b>	C1 Benz[a]anthracenes/chrysenes
<b>7</b>	Acenaphthylene	<b>25</b>	C2 Benz[a]anthracenes/chrysenes
<b>8</b>	Acenaphthene	<b>26</b>	C3 Benz[a]anthracenes/chrysenes
<b>9</b>	Fluorene	<b>27</b>	C4 Benz[a]anthracenes/chrysenes
<b>10</b>	C1 Fluorenes	<b>28</b>	Benzo[b]fluoranthene
<b>11</b>	C2 Fluorenes	<b>29</b>	Benzo[e]pyrene
<b>12</b>	C3 Fluorenes	<b>30</b>	Benzo[a]pyrene
<b>13</b>	Phenanthrene	<b>31</b>	Perylene
<b>14</b>	Anthracene	<b>32</b>	Indeno[1,2,3-cd]pyrene
<b>15</b>	C1 Phenanthrenes/anthracenes	<b>33</b>	Dibenz[a,h]anthracene
<b>16</b>	C2 Phenanthrenes/anthracenes	<b>34</b>	Benzo[ghi]perylene
<b>17</b>	C3 Phenanthrenes/anthracenes		
<b>18</b>	C4 Phenanthrenes/anthracenes		

## A4. ESBs for Dieldrin and Endrin

The revised SQGV and SQG-High values for dieldrin and endrin are the TEL and PEL values rather than the ERL and ERM values for organic contaminants (MacDonald et al., 2000; CCME, 2002). In addition, reviews of effects data for dieldrin and endrin have been made and ESB approaches proposed that may be useful for assessments where these compounds are major COPCs (USEPA, 2003b,c, 2012). ESBs for dieldrin and endrin are based on EqP theory that considers sediment OC (with options for BC) as the major binding phase for these chemicals.

For dieldrin, the ESB-based FCV is 12 (5.4-27) µg/g OC for freshwater sediments and 28 (12 to 62) µg/g OC for saltwater sediments.

For endrin, the ESB-based final chronic value (FCV) is 5.4 (2.4-12) µg/g OC for freshwater sediments and 0.99 (0.44-2.2) µg/g OC for saltwater sediments.

The confidence limits (in parentheses) were calculated using the uncertainty associated with the degree to which toxicity could be predicted by multiplying the partition coefficient for binding of endrin or dieldrin to organic carbon ( $K_{oc}$ ) and the water-only effects concentration. It is suggested that the upper confidence limit is used as the SQG-High value.

It is suggested that these values are adopted as SQGVs.

### **ESB-based SQGs for dieldrin:**

For freshwater sediment:

SQGV = 0.12 mg dieldrin/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

SQG-High = 0.27 mg dieldrin/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

For saltwater (marine) sediment:

SQGV = 0.28 mg dieldrin/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

SQG-High = 0.62 mg dieldrin/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

### **ESB-based SQGs for endrin:**

For freshwater sediment:

SQGV = 0.054 mg endrin/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

SQG-High = 0.12 mg endrin/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

For saltwater (marine) sediment:

SQGV = 0.01 mg endrin/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

SQG-High = 0.22 mg endrin/kg (normalised to 1% organic carbon, dry weight)

## A5. Derivation of a Guideline Value for Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons

Total petroleum hydrocarbons are common sediment contaminants and there are now sufficient effects data to derive a SQGV. They comprise a broad group of hydrocarbons, including crude and refined oils that are usually classified according to the number of carbon atoms contained in their alkane chains. Generally TPH concentrations are reported as C6-C9, C10-C14, C15-C28, C29-C36 TPHs, where the numbers refer to the number of carbon atoms. Once in the sediment, TPHs will generally adsorb to sediment particles, particularly those with high concentrations of organic matter. Some TPHs may redissolve, disperse and evaporate, while other TPHs may undergo biological or photo-degradation. The solubility, reactivity, transport, and degradability of TPHs generally decreases as their size increases (i.e. as the number of carbon atoms increases). As a consequence of the poorly defined nature of TPHs contaminants and of these processes, the composition of TPHs in contaminated sediments is very complex and will vary considerably from site to site. Therefore, the toxic effects of TPH-contaminated sediments will also vary greatly.

The concentration of TPHs in a sediment is typically determined using an operationally defined procedure (e.g. hexane/dichloromethane or supercritical fluid extractions). The extraction procedures can be non-specific to petroleum compounds, and a number of other non-polar organic substances may contribute to the result (e.g. peat, humic acids, or organic waste associated with pulp and paper mills). The potential for interferences and false measurements of TPHs may therefore need to be considered. Equally important to consider is that not all types of petroleum hydrocarbons will be equally harmful, and their bioavailability will be influenced by their carbon chain length, how long they have been in the sediments, and the concentration of organic carbon. Typical limits of reporting (LORs) for TPHs by most analytical laboratories are 25 mg/kg for C6-C9, 50 mg/kg for C10-C14, 100 mg/kg for C15-C28, and 100 mg/kg for C29-C36. This equates to an overall LOR of 275 mg TPHs/kg.

In studies by Brils et al. (2002), the effect of a concentration series of TPHs spiked into sediments on three toxicological endpoints was investigated: *Vibrio fischeri* (10-min test, endpoint bioluminescence inhibition), *Corophium volutator* (10-d test, endpoint mortality), and *Echinocardium cordatum* (14-d test, endpoint mortality). The study determined EC50s for gas oil and hydraulic oil, respectively, of 44 and 2,680 mg/kg dry weight for *V. fischeri*, 100 and 9,100 mg/kg dry weight for *C. volutator*, 190, and 1060 mg/kg dry weight for *E. cordatum*. The most toxic fraction was the C10-C19 fraction. For TPHs in general, a no-observable-effects-concentration (NOEC) of 200 mg C10-40 TPHs/kg was calculated.

Pettigrove and Hoffmann (2005) observed significant impairment of freshwater macroinvertebrate assemblages for freshwater sediments that had been spiked with a synthetic motor oil. They estimated a Threshold Effect Concentration (TEC) of 860 mg TPH/kg.

Studies by Simpson et al. (2006) investigated the effect of hydrocarbon-contaminated sediments on the sub-lethal response of the benthic marine alga, *Entomoneis cf punctulata*. The sediments contained high concentrations of both PAHs and TPHs, and there was a strong relationship ( $p < 0.01$ ) between the concentrations of total PAHs and total TPHs in the sediment:  $\text{TPHs} = 2.2 \times \text{total PAHs} + 1470 \text{ mg/kg}$  ( $r^2 = 0.77$ ), indicating a possible common source for these contaminants. The NOEC determined based on the total PAH concentration was approximately 490 mg total PAHs/kg (dry weight), which equates to a concentration of 1080 mg TPHs/kg.

Brils et al. (2002) observed that the toxicity of diesel marine oil in sediments decreased significantly over time. Following 27 months of weathering of soil-spiked sediments, Jonker et al. (2006) observed significant losses, attributed to microbial degradation, of C10-C16 TPH fractions. The weathered sediments were significantly less toxic than the freshly-spiked sediments, and the toxicity was attributed to oil constituents rather than the co-occurring PAHs.

The USEPA has a convincing case that "oil" in sediment has an effect on some invertebrates beyond that from PAHs alone (Mount, presentation at SETAC North America meeting, New Orleans, 2009).



Normalization to volume appeared important for interpreting concentration-response relationships. In whole sediment TIE studies where charcoal is added to remove organics (USEPA, 2007), the response of oil and PAHs differed. For estuarine/marine benthic organisms, the effects threshold determined for mineral oil were: 10-d LC50 of 20,000 mg/kg *Ampelisca abdita* (Burgess, unpublished results); 10-d LC50 210 mg/kg for *Leptocheirus plumulosus*; and 28-d NOEC > 18750 mg/kg for *Neanthes arenaceodentata* (Mount, presentation at SETAC North America meeting, New Orleans, 2009).

Verbruggen et al. (2008) have undertaken the most comprehensive study of the toxicity of TPHs in sediments and proposed a method for deriving thresholds. For freshwater and marine sediments spiked with either a light gas oil or a heavier lubricant, they conducted a suite of acute and chronic toxicity tests and a series of equilibrium partitioning calculations to estimate narcosis or baseline toxicity. Excellent concentration-response relationships (based on baseline toxicity) were obtained for the marine amphipod *Corophium volutator*, the sea urchin *Echinocardium cordatum*, and freshwater midge larvae *Chironomus riparius* and the amphipod *Hyalella azteca* (all 10-day tests). Useable responses were obtained for the bacterium *Vibrio. fischeri* and the mayfly *Ephoron virgo* (freshwater, 10-d), but poor responses were obtained for the nematode *Plectus acuminatus* (freshwater, 10-d), although these were still used by Verbruggen et al. (2008) in the threshold derivations. Both EC50 and EC10 values were calculated for each endpoint, although very wide 90% confidence intervals existed for the EC10s. Toxic effects were attributed to TPHs for the lighter gas oil, but for the heavier lubricant, toxicity was attributed to physical effects of the soil on the sediment (e.g. effecting burrowing and oxygen levels).

Verbruggen et al. (2008) derived TPH fraction-based environmental risk limits for a range of TPH carbon-numbers. For sediment with 5-10% TOC these ranged from 0.7 mg/kg (dry weight) for lighter 5-6 carbon TPHs to 15 mg/kg for heavier 21-35 carbon TPHs. These derivations would indicate that chronic effects to some species are quite possible for sediments with TPH concentration <50 mg/kg. For comparison, the LC50s were 160 (*C. volutator*), 200 (*E. cordatum*), 500 (*H. azteca*) and 3200 (*C. riparius*) mg TPH/kg and the EC10s were 100, 110, 170 and 2200 mg/kg respectively (the four species with the best concentration response relationships). Higher effects thresholds were determined for the heavier lubricant.

There are some interesting analytical and methodological challenges in the Verbruggen et al. (2008) study. For the TPH-spiked sediments, the background TPH concentrations ranged from 30 to 110 mg/kg and were believed to be of biogenic. The average recoveries of the spiked and background TPHs were used to calculate the carbon numbers for aromatic and aliphatic parts. Between 15 and 65% of the spiked TPHs were not recovered in the analyses (this is not considered unusual), but believed to remain present in the sediments in a non-bioavailable form. A number of other assumptions were necessary to estimate the exposure concentration used to derive the effects thresholds.

The limited effects threshold data available for total TPHs make setting a SQGV difficult. As the chronic effects threshold for some species may be below the typical LOR for TPHs of 275 mg/kg (sum of 25/50/100/100 mg/kg TPH C6-C9//C10-C14/C15-C28/C29-C36), then, if TPHs can be detected, they should be considered above the trigger level. Based on the available effects data and the routinely achieved LOR for TPHs, it is proposed that the LOR of 280 mg/kg be used as a SQGV. An arbitrary ISQG-High value of 550 mg TPH/kg is also proposed. While this initial approach is considered simplistic, and does not consider the differences in toxicity of the various TPH fractions, without improved LORs and stronger cause-effects relationships more complex guidelines are not appropriate.

Note that while TPHs will also partition strongly to sediment organic carbon, insufficient information is available to derive a SQGV that is modified using the TOC concentration of the sediments (as is done for other hydrophobic organic substances such as PAHs).

**SQGV for TPHs:**

For all sediments: SQGV = 280 mg TPH/kg (dry weight)

SQG-High value = 550 mg TPH/kg (dry weight)

## A6. AVS-SEM and ESBs Applications for Metal Mixtures

This suggested revision, or modification of the application of the AVS-SEM approach, is based on the much greater understanding of the interaction of metals with sulfide phases in sediments that has been achieved since the release of the original Guideline document (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000).

An ESB approach for the metal mixtures ( $ESB_{MM}$ ) of Ag, Cd, Cu, Pb, Ni, and Zn in sediments has been proposed by the USEPA (2005). The EqP theory is used to calculate ESBs based on the metal partitioning in the sediment between acid-volatile sulfides, pore water, benthic organisms, and other sediment phases such as organic carbon (USEPA, 2005). The basis of these ESBs is that AVS is the key partitioning phase controlling cationic metal activity and metal-induced toxicity in the sediment–porewater system (Di Toro et al., 1992; Berry et al., 1996). AVS binds Ag, Cd, Cu, Co, Hg, Pb, Ni, and Zn, forming insoluble sulfide complexes with minimal biological availability. When there is a molar excess of AVS over SEM ( $SEM = \sum Ag, Cd, Cu, Co, Hg, Pb, Ni, Zn$ ), these metals are predicted to be bound as sulfide phases and not present in the pore waters at concentrations that can cause biological effects. When  $SEM - AVS < 0$ , the sediments should not exhibit toxicity that can be attributed to these metals. The  $SEM - AVS$  approach was used as a bioavailability qualifier in the interim guidelines (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000).

The AVS and SEM fractions are usually defined as the molar amounts (mmol/kg) of sulfide and metal respectively, that are released from the sediments by extraction in dilute HCl (0.5–1 M) in 0.5 to 1 h (Di Toro et al., 1992; Allen et al., 1993; Simpson et al., 1998; Simpson et al., 2000). AVS concentrations are operationally defined, as there is no true measure of the accuracy of the results. It has been observed that there can be great variability among laboratories analysing the same samples (Hammerschmidt and Burton, 2010).

ESBs can also be calculated on a porewater basis, i.e. if porewater metal concentrations are below WQGs. The ESB metal-mixture procedure of the USEPA (2005) proposes further refinement of the EqP approach to consider partitioning of these metals to both AVS and particulate organic carbon:  $(SEM - AVS)/f_{OC}$ , where  $f_{OC}$  is the fraction of sediment that is organic carbon.

While the ESBs based on the  $SEM - AVS$  theory adequately predict which sediments are not toxic, when  $SEM - AVS > 0$  there is not a sound basis for predicting thresholds for when toxicity should occur. Seasonal changes can also influence the AVS-SEM relationship, and surficial sediments typically have much lower AVS concentrations than the deeper sediments (Naylor et al., 2004; Gallon et al., 2008; De Jonge et al., 2010; Teuchies et al. 2012). As many organisms reside within the more oxidised surface sediments or create oxidised microniches within more anoxic sediments, the protection from metal provided by AVS is not boundless (Simpson et al., 2012). There is still much uncertainty regarding the contribution of dietary-metal exposure to toxicity in benthic organisms (Rainbow, 2007; Simpson and Batley, 2007; Luoma and Rainbow, 2008; Campana et al., 2012; Camusso et al., 2012). Consequently, upper limits to the  $(SEM - AVS)$  threshold and  $ESB_{MM}$  are considered necessary, e.g. if the concentration of AVS is 50  $\mu\text{mol/g}$ , the models predict a capacity to bind 3000 mg Cu/kg, but we doubt this would provide adequate protection to all benthic organisms.

For the revised guidelines, it is recommended that an upper threshold is applied for each metal ESB (Ag, Cd, Cu, Ni, Pb, Zn). As insufficient biological effects data exist to set risk-based limits, it is suggested that these thresholds should be set as a multiple of the existing SQGVs. The metals Ag, Cd, and Hg have low SQGVs and generally occur in sediments at low concentrations unless a major point-source of these metals is present. The metals Cu, Ni, Pb and Zn have higher SQGVs and generally occur at moderate concentrations in sediments that receive diffuse anthropogenic inputs (e.g. urban stormwater). Upper thresholds for the application of AVS-SEM and ESB-based SQGV modification for these metals are suggested as: Hg = 3 mg/kg (20 $\times$  the SQGV), Ag = 10 mg/kg (10 $\times$  the SQGV), Cd = 15 mg/kg (10 $\times$  the SQGV), Cu = 300 mg/kg ( $\sim$ 5 $\times$  the SQGV), Ni = 200 mg/kg ( $\sim$ 5 $\times$  the SQGV), Pb = 500 mg/kg (10  $\times$  the SQGV), and Zn = 1000 mg/kg (5 $\times$  the SQGV). The use of these arbitrary upper thresholds applies greater conservatism to the application of AVS-SEM theory than existed in the original guidelines (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000).

AVS concentrations are frequently highly variable in surface sediments and an excess of AVS over SEM in sediments sampled over a 0-10 cm depth, will not mean a similar excess of AVS exists for the 0-3 mm surface layer in which many meiofauna reside. For sediments with metal concentrations exceeding the SQG-High values, it is not uncommon to observe toxicity to epibenthic invertebrates despite an excess of AVS over SEM in the bulk sediment sample being tested. This may occur due to the oxidation of surface AVS during the toxicity tests, and but similar changes in metal bioavailability may occur when deeper sediments are brought to the surface in field locations.

It is important to note that benthic ecosystem health may be directly influenced by sulfide and high AVS concentrations in surface sediments (e.g. greater than 30-50  $\mu\text{mol/g}$ ), may cause a reduction in species diversity, or abundance some species (Chariton et al., 2010).

In summary, the  $\text{ESB}_{\text{MM}}$  should be applied with caution and the SEM – AVS and  $(\text{SEM} - \text{AVS})/f_{\text{OC}}$  should be applied as modifying factors, rather than benchmarks, with careful attention to upper thresholds values for application to each metal.

To validate EqP approaches for metals, the direct measurements of metal concentrations in pore waters are still considered useful. However, as noted earlier, accurate porewater metal measurements are difficult due to the influence that small disturbances can rapidly have on metal concentrations. For many metals, the DGT technique now provides a useful method for measuring porewater metal concentrations and fluxes at the sediment water interface (Tankere-Muller et al., 2006; Simpson et al., 2012). It is anticipated that increased use of this technique will be valuable for validating EqP approaches for metals.

#### **AVS-based modification of SQGVs for Ag, Cd, Cu, Hg, Pb, Ni, and Zn:**

Any sediment in which the molar difference  $\text{SEM} > \text{AVS}$  should pose a low risk of adverse biological effects due to Ag, Cd, Cu, Hg, Pb, Ni and Zn; where  $\text{SEM} = \sum(\text{Ag}, \text{Cd}, \text{Cu}, \text{Hg}, \text{Ni}, \text{Pb}, \text{Zn})$  ( $\mu\text{mol/g}$ )

When this condition is met, the SQGV for each metal may be modified to a maximum set by the upper threshold. For assessments where these upper thresholds are exceeded, SEM-AVS or ESB should not used as 'bioavailability modifiers'.

#### **Upper thresholds for metals when applying AVS-SEM or ESB approaches**

Hg = 3 mg/kg (dry weight) (20× the SQGV)  
 Ag = 10 mg/kg (dry weight) (10× the SQGV)  
 Cd = 15 mg/kg (dry weight) (10× the SQGV)  
 Cu = 325 mg/kg (dry weight) (5× the SQGV)  
 Ni = 210 mg/kg (dry weight) (5× the SQGV)  
 Pb = 500 mg/kg (dry weight) (10 × the SQGV)  
 Zn = 1000 mg/kg (dry weight) (5× the SQGV)

For AVS, an arbitrary upper threshold of 50  $\mu\text{mol/g}$  is suggested, whereby different ecological effects due to anoxia may become more apparent.

## A7. Derivation of Sediment Property-Specific Guideline Values for Metals

This is a discussion topic rather than a suggested SQG revision, that considered how factors that affect the bioavailability of metals in more oxidised sediments may be used to modify trigger values for metals. The discussion is predominantly based on an extensive data set for copper, but it is expected that similar approaches may be applicable for other metals.

While equilibrium partitioning models have not been developed for oxic sediments, it has recently been demonstrated that toxicity thresholds based on the organic carbon (OC)-normalised copper concentration of the <63 µm sediment fraction were effective in predicting sub-lethal and lethal effects to a range of benthic organisms (Simpson et al., 2011; Strom et al., 2011; Campana et al., 2012; Campana et al., 2013). However a universal applicable model for metal bioavailability in oxidised sediments is not yet available. Costello et al. (2011) observed that the bioavailability of nickel in surface sediments was more strongly influenced by the concentrations of iron and manganese oxides than by OC. If future models of metal bioavailability are to be applicable to metal mixtures, then it is likely that the models should explicitly consider pools of AVS, OC and iron and manganese oxides as phases that reduce toxicity.

### A7.1 Background

The Australian and New Zealand interim SQGV for copper in sediments is 65 mg/kg (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000) and the ISQG-High value is 270 mg/kg. The SQGV was based on empirical effect data from Hong Kong (Chapman et al., 1999). The values may be compared to the effects range low (ERL) and effects range mean (ERM) values of 34 and 270 mg/kg derived by Long et al. (1995) and the threshold effects level (TEL) and probably effects level (PEL) values of 18.7 and 108 mg/kg derived by MacDonald et al. (1996). Each of these guideline values was generally derived from a ranking of toxicity and other effects data, and because contaminants typically co-occur (e.g. metals and organics), any toxicity was equally attributed to all contaminants within the mixture. This type of guideline derivation approach is very different to that used for the water quality guidelines (WQG), in which the WQG is derived from species sensitivity distributions of effect thresholds, for a range of species, where the effects are entirely from the contaminant of concern. The implication for the interim SQGs is that their value is greatest when applied to sediments with broad mixtures of contaminants (Long et al., 2006), but they should not be considered thresholds for any of the individual contaminants in isolation.

As discussed in the review by Simpson and Batley (2007), the toxicity of metal contaminants in sediments to benthic organisms is dependent on the bioavailability of metals in both the water (via exposure to pore water, burrow water, or overlying water) and sediment phases (via ingestion of particles), and on the sensitivity of the organism to these metal exposures. The bioavailability of metals in sediments is controlled by:

- (i) speciation (e.g. metal binding with particulate sulfide, organic carbon, and iron hydroxide phases);
- (ii) sediment-water partitioning relationships;
- (iii) organism physiology (uptake rates from waters, assimilation efficiencies from particulates); and
- (iv) organism feeding and other behaviour (feeding selectivity, burrow irrigation).

Where toxic effects have been attributed directly to copper, whole-sediment toxicity tests of both naturally contaminated (field-collected) sediments and artificially contaminated (copper-spiked) sediments using a range of benthic organisms indicate that toxic effects from copper are observed over a very broad range of total particulate copper concentrations (Roper et al., 1995; Costa et al., 1996; Bat and Raffaelli, 1998; Marsden and Wong, 2001; Marsden 2002; King et al., 2004; Simpson, 2005). However, for the majority of these studies, insufficient information was provided on the sediment properties and partitioning of copper between the dissolved and particulate phases to allow the interpretation of whether the copper-spiked

sediments used would provide environmentally realistic exposures (Simpson and Batley, 2007). It has been demonstrated that both aqueous and dietary exposure to copper can cause toxic effects to some invertebrates (King et al. 2005, Simpson and King 2005). For many of the past studies, very little time was allowed for the spiked copper to equilibrate with the sediments before tests were commenced. This has the effect of resulting in very high porewater and overlying water copper concentrations compared to what is typically measured for field-contaminated sediments with similar total copper concentrations (Bat and Raffaelli, 1998). Such abnormally high dissolved copper concentrations results in a misinterpretation of the sensitivity of organisms to sediment copper (Simpson, 2005).

#### **A7.1.1 EFFECTS DATA FOR EXPOSURES TO COPPER-SPIKED SEDIMENTS**

Using copper-spiked fine sands, equilibrated for 24-48 h before toxicity tests, Roper et al. (1995) observed that the burial behaviour of the juvenile bivalve, *Macomona liliana* (endemic to New Zealand) was affected at 25 mg Cu/kg, and avoidance occurred at 10 mg Cu/kg. As no measurements of dissolved copper was made for pore waters or overlying waters, it is not possible to determine the significance of these results in terms of sediment copper and effects that might occur for more environmentally realistic exposures.

Using copper-spiked sediments with varying sediment particles size and organic carbon ranges, Costa et al (1996) determined that 10-day LC50 for the amphipod *Gammarus locusta* (endemic to Europe) of 6.8, 57 and >200 (no effects) mg/kg for sediments with the properties fine-fraction (%FF)/organic matter (by loss-on-ignition) 0.5%FF/0.9%LOI, 25%FF/1.9%LOI, 75%FF/7.1%LOI respectively. The sediments had been spiked with copper and equilibrated for just 24 h before toxicity tests were undertaken and it is likely that most of the effects were due to dissolved copper that had not bound to the sediments. Despite the likely artefact associated with inadequate equilibration of the spiked copper, the influence of particle size and organic matter (note that a LOI typically provides a high estimate of TOC) on the effects threshold was consistent with the revision of the Cu-SQG being proposed.

Studies by Marsden and Wong (2001) and Marsden (2000) determined a 10-day LC50 for the amphipod *Paracorphium excavatum* (endemic to New Zealand) of 55 mg/kg, and effects to juvenile recruitment at less than 20 mg/kg. The sediment used contained 57% fine material and 1.6% organic matter (by LOI), but like many of the past studies, the spiked copper was not given adequate time to equilibrate, with dissolved copper concentrations not representing environmentally realistic exposures (no measurements were made to check).

Bat and Raffaelli (1998) spiked sediment of particle size <300 µm with a mixture of Cd, Cu and Zn, and equilibrated for a few days (actual time not reported), before assessing survival of the amphipod *Corophium volutator* (endemic to the UK). An LC50 of 37 mg Cu/kg was determined, however as dissolved Cd, Cu and Zn concentrations exceeded 300, 400 and 100 µg/L during the tests, the effects were likely to be due to a combination of these dissolved metals. These dissolved concentrations greatly exceeded those observed for similarly contaminated field sediments, making the effects data of little use for guideline development.

For metal-metal spiked muddy sediments, equilibrated for 9 days before testing, Hagopian-Schlekat et al. (2001) determined a 96-h LC50 of 282 mg Cu/kg for survival of the copepod *Amphiascus tenuiremis*. Dissolved metals measured in the pore water indicated the effects were due to the dissolved exposure of the combined metals, with the LC50 for dissolved copper being 124 µg/L. Due to presence of the high dissolved mixed-metal concentrations, these data are also of little use for development of an GV for copper.

In the studies discussed by Simpson (2005) in which copper-spiked silty sediments were prepared to achieve environmentally-realistic partitioning between the dissolved and sediment phase, survival was unaffected at copper concentrations at the ISQG-High value of 270 mg/kg for any of the nine benthic organism considered. These studies indicated that 'single value' SQGVs are ineffective for predicting the toxicity of copper in sediments and that a better approach would be to have SQGVs that vary according to changes in sediment properties.

## A7.2 Guideline Value Based on Porewater Copper Toxicity

One approach to assessing sediment quality is to derive a WQG for pore waters based on the database of dissolved copper toxicity for benthic organisms only. There is sufficient information on the sensitivity of benthic biota to dissolved copper in water-only toxicity tests to develop a copper guideline for exposure to benthic biota via sediment-associated waters (e.g. pore water, burrow water, and closely-associated overlying water). The derivation of a trigger value for copper in sediment-associated waters should only consider data from benthic organism life-stages that are in intimate contact with the sediment pore water and not organisms that don't reside in the sediments (benthos), or life stages of benthic organisms that occur solely in the water column, such as planktonic/larval life stages that exist in the water column before settling on the sediment substrate. A review of effects data for dissolved copper and the derivation of acute and chronic effects thresholds for copper in sediment-associated waters was undertaken by Simpson (2005).

The compiled copper effects data for benthic organism data are provided in Simpson et al. (2011). The most commonly reported effects data were LC50 values for water-only tests, of which there were values for 65 different species, comprising 1 benthic algae, 13 amphipods, 15 bivalves, 3 crabs, 3 gastropods, 10 harpacticoid copepods, 12 polychaetes, and 8 prawns/shrimps. Looking at the data in more detail, there were 44 different species with 96-h LC50 values for adults and 20 for juveniles. For 10-d tests there were 20 species with LC50 values for adults and 5 for juveniles. Chronic LC50 values were reported for 13 species and it was possible to calculate acute to chronic ratios (ACRs) (acute LC50/chronic LC50). Ratios of adult LC50 to juvenile LC50 and 96-h LC50 to 10-d LC50 could also be calculated for a range of species. Cumulative frequency plots of the acute LC50 values (Figure A7.1) indicate the position of the organism types (algae, amphipods, bivalve, etc.). These findings are from a range of geographic locations (North America, Europe, Australasia, etc.) with no specific differences based on location. These plots show that it is not easy to generalise about the sensitivity of different organism types (acute LC50 range from 15 to 15,000 µg/L), with bivalves and amphipods being among both the most and least sensitive species.

Based on the available 96-h LC50 values for the 54 organisms and using data for juveniles in preference to adults, a SSD calculation resulted in a 95% species protection concentration (95%PC) against acute toxicity of 38 µg Cu/L (Figure A7.2). While combining these data may not appear that logical, it was considered appropriate given the large variations in species lifecycles, which were not reported for most studies. If the SSDs were calculated based on data for either adults or juveniles, the acute 95%PC would be 48 µg/L for 96-h LC50 values for adults (n=42) and 33 µg/L for juveniles (n=20).

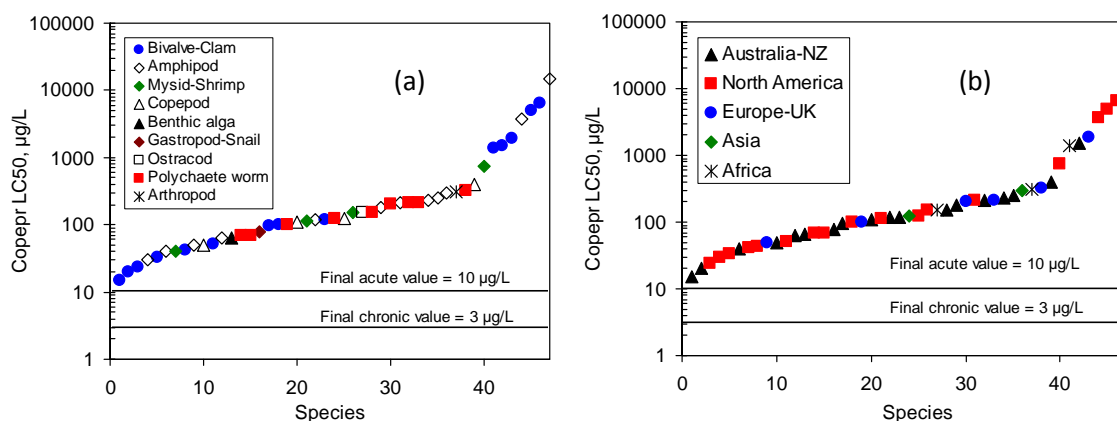
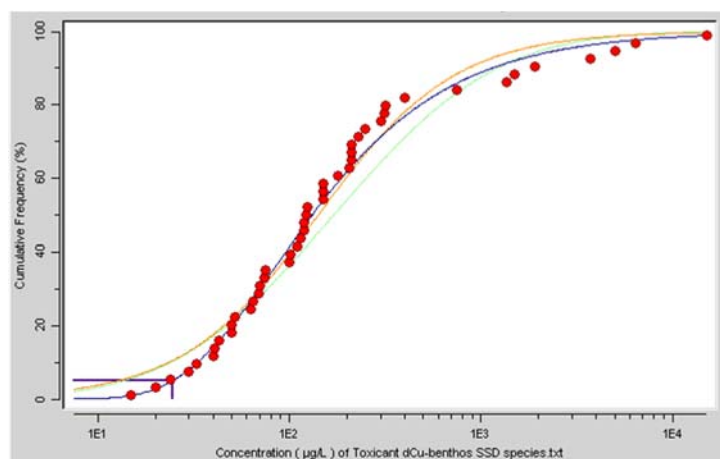


Figure A7.1. Cumulative frequency plot of LC50 values for benthic organisms used to calculate a WQG for porewater copper: (a) organism type and (b) species location (from Simpson et al., 2011)



**Figure A7.2. SSD calculation of final acute value LC50 (FAV-LC50) for benthic organisms exposed to copper in seawater**

As benthic organisms are not always amenable to water-only exposures due to their preference to bury in sediments, it is not surprising that there are few studies that reported sub-lethal endpoints from water-only exposure tests. Significant and potentially confounding factors that should be considered when water-only effects data for benthic organisms are used include the potential for increased stress to the organism as a result of not having a sediment substrate in which it can burrow, and also the removal of possible dietary exposure routes that exist for organisms that ingest sediment particles (Strom et al., 2011). There were only 6 benthic species for which sub-lethal effects thresholds were reported (e.g. for gravidity, reproduction, growth). It is not considered appropriate to use such small data sets in SSD calculations, and it is generally recommended that a minimum of 8 species is used and preferably 10 or more. In many environments, contaminant exposures vary considerably (Angel et al., 2010; Burton et al., 2000). Organisms are able to avoid continuous exposures to high levels of contaminants (Eriksson Wiklund et al., 2006; Lopes et al., 2004). Consequently it may be appropriate to also consider chronic effects that include lethality occurring as a result of exposure periods of 10 days, as longer continuous exposures are unlikely to occur. While none of the data sets for sub-lethal or chronic effects appear ideal for guideline derivation, they may provide useful estimations. Based on the sub-lethal effects data for just the 6 species, the calculated 95%PC was 9.2 µg/L. Using the 10-day effects data for adults (LC50 values, n=20), the 95%PC value was 13 µg/L.

Water quality guidelines are traditionally based on chronic no observable effect concentrations (NOECs) (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000) rather than acute or chronic data. To convert from acute LC50s to chronic NOECs, a factor of 10 is usually applied, a factor of 5 to convert chronic E(L)C50s to chronic NOECs, and a factor of 2.5 to convert LOECs (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000). From the various studies (Table S1), it was difficult to derive a consistent set of ACRs as the endpoints and exposure periods for lethal and sub-lethal endpoints varied considerably. In the present study, lethality occurring within 7 days was considered to be an acute endpoint, with the chronic endpoints including sub-lethal effects or lethality occurring for exposures of 10 days (or greater) if sub-lethal endpoints were not available. There were 11 species for which ACRs could be derived and the geometric mean of the 11 ACRs was 3.2. The geometric mean of the ratios of adult/juvenile and 96-h/10-h LC50s were 2.3 and 3.2, respectively. The USEPA (2003e) draft ambient water criteria for copper in saltwater used an ACR of 3.23 for guideline derivation.

To derive a 95% species protection guideline for porewater copper, two approaches were considered: (i) the SSD-calculated 95%PC for 96-h LC50 values of 38 µg/L (n=54) divided by a factor of 10 to give a value of 3.8 µg/L; and (ii) the SSD calculated 95%PC for EC50 values of 9.2 µg/L (n=6) divided by the ACR of 3.2 to give a value of 2.9 µg Cu/L. While both approaches have strong and weak points, the outcomes were quite similar and a final chronic value (FCV) and guideline for porewater copper of 3 µg/L seems very appropriate. This value can be compared to the 95% PC of 1.3 µg/L derived as the WQG using data for 26 species



(ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000), which includes data for all water-column marine organisms, including fish and embryo/larval life-stages of benthic species.

### A7.3 Guideline Value Based on Acute Toxicity of Copper to Benthic Organisms

The toxicity of copper in sediments may occur as a result of exposure through either dissolved or dietary exposure routes. For the dissolved phase, the exposure may be via pore water, burrow water, or overlying water. The dietary exposure route may include both living (e.g. algae, other benthos) and non-living (e.g. organic detritus, sediments) sources of particulate copper. The organism's feeding selectivity and physiology (gut passage time, metal assimilation efficiency from solid) will determine which of these phases contributes the greatest to the copper exposure.

The bioavailability of sediment-bound copper can be measured through its ability to be assimilated by the organism and may be influenced by the solid-phase speciation, i.e. copper binding with particulate sulfide, organic carbon, and iron and manganese (oxy)hydroxide phases. Accurately determining the forms of particulate copper is not possible using any existing wet-chemical or other techniques, e.g. spectrometry. At best, estimates of certain forms of copper can be made, the most commonly used approach involving variations in wet chemical extractions, to loosely classify the copper in weakly to strongly bound fractions that may or may not have ecological relevance. Naturally occurring copper is often highly mineralised and will be less bioavailable to benthic organisms compared to anthropogenic copper, which may be extractable using dilute acids (e.g. 1 M HCl). In sediments that have appreciable concentrations of reactive sulfide (e.g. AVS), the reaction between AVS and copper results in the formation of insoluble copper sulfide phases (e.g. CuS, Cu<sub>2</sub>S) (Simpson et al., 2000; US EPA, 2005). Likewise, sediments with higher concentrations of particulate organic carbon (POC) generally bind copper more strongly than those with less POC (Simpson and Batley, 2007).

Relationships between AVS, 1 M HCl-extractable metals, POC, dissolved metals and toxicity to benthic organisms have been utilised to make predictions of the bioavailability and toxicity of metals in sediments (US EPA, 2005). However, for copper, the insolubility of copper sulfide phases in 1 M HCl severely limits this approach (Simpson et al., 1998). Other factors that are known to influence the partitioning of copper between the dissolved and particulate phases are particle size (i.e. surface area) and the concentrations and speciation of iron and manganese (Simpson and Batley, 2003).

Sediment-water partitioning relationships, which express the relative portion of copper associated with dissolved and solid phases ( $K_d$  (in L/kg) = [Sediment-Cu, mg/kg]/[Water-Cu, mg/L]), should be examined when considering which exposure pathways will be the greatest contributor to copper toxicity (Simpson, 2005). Dissolved copper is expected to be the most bioavailable form of copper to any organisms, and if the sediment-associated pore water or burrow water (or overlying water in closed systems such as toxicity tests) has dissolved copper concentrations above the water-only effects thresholds, effects would be expected in the whole sediments from the dissolved exposure. Conversely, when dissolved copper concentrations in sediment-associated waters are below these effects concentrations, any toxic effects attributable to copper are likely to be from the dietary exposure route.

#### A7.3.1 DERIVATION OF COPPER GUIDELINE VALUES FOR SEDIMENTS

Species sensitivity distributions (SSDs) can be used to calculate concentrations of chemicals that are protective of effects to specified percentages of species, e.g. 95% protection concentration (PC 95) (Campbell et al., 2000). Hypothetically, provided adequate data exist, it is possible to derive an SSD-based SQGV for copper that accounts for the differences in sediment properties (Figure A7.3) (Simpson and Batley, 2007). If sediment properties such as AVS, TOC, Fe/Mn modify copper effects thresholds for most organisms in the same manner (or to a comparable degree), then it may also be feasible to normalise SSDs



for different sediment types to sediment properties. This type of SSD-approach would require effects data, spanning ranges of species that encompass all major exposure pathways, and all sediment types for which the guidelines may be applied. It is not known whether procedures for normalising for sediment properties would be successful and the SSD-approach may be appropriate for only a few sediment types.

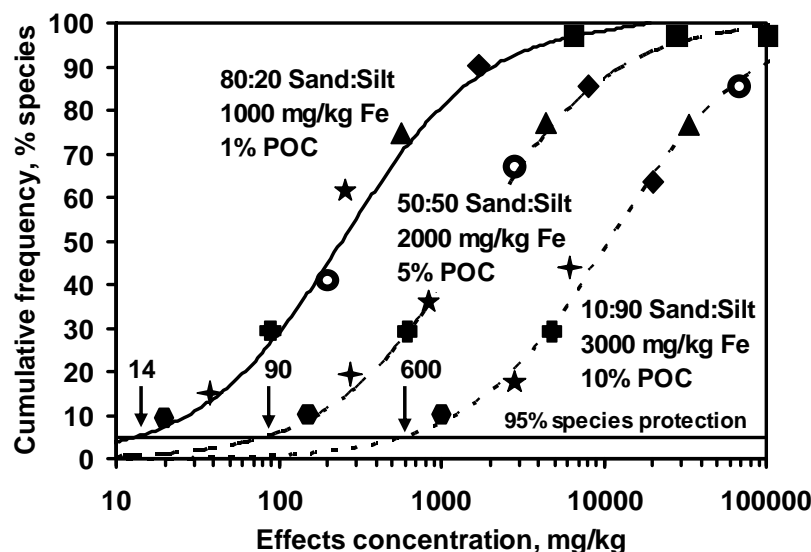


Figure A7.3. Conceptual SSDs for toxic effects in sediments with varying properties. Symbols represent different classes of sediment-dwelling biota, e.g. bacteria, algae, mysids, amphipods, bivalves, polychaete worms, snails, and crabs (from Simpson and Batley, 2007).

### A7.3.2 COPPER PARTITIONING IN COPPER-SPIKED SEDIMENTS

The following key points arise from toxicity studies using copper-spiked sediments:

- Following adequate period for equilibration, for partially oxidised sediments the  $K_D$  for partitioning of copper between the sediment and water phases generally varies from around  $1 \times 10^4$  L/kg for sandy sediments to  $1 \times 10^6$  L/kg for silty sediments.
- Effects thresholds can be derived in terms of a number of copper fractions, e.g. total recoverable copper, 1-M HCl extractable copper, dissolved copper, or various 'normalised' (%silt, %TOC, AVS) fractions. Without reasonable understanding of the copper exposure pathway(s) that contributed to the lethal effects, it is not appropriate to use these data for SSD-based calculations.
- Organic carbon appeared to be more important than AVS in controlling copper bioavailability in sediments.
- Copper associated with AVS in surface sediments is labile over longer time-frames, leading to conversion to dissolved or oxidised forms.
- Copper associated with mineralised forms has a very low lability (ability to cause exposure through dissolution or dietary exposure).

There are adequate acute effects data for silty sediments to use an SSD to derive protective concentrations for copper using the same approach as used for the water quality guidelines (Table A7.1; Simpson et al., 2011).

**Table A7.1. Acute lethality effects thresholds determined for a copper-spiked silty sediment**

ORGANISM	DURATION	OVERLYING WATER DISSOLVED COPPER EFFECTS GV, µg Cu/L <sup>a</sup>				
	DAYS	LC50 <sup>a</sup>	LC20	LC10	LOEC	NOEC
<i>Corophium minor</i> <sup>a</sup>	10 <sup>n=2</sup>	63±4	55±2	51±6	56±6	48±8
<i>Hyale longicornis</i> <sup>a</sup>	10 <sup>n=2</sup>	47±4	26±3	20±2	33±7	17±3
<i>Nassarius burchardi</i> <sup>a</sup>	10 <sup>n=2</sup>	67±7	47±2	33±2	69±8	20±17
<i>Nassarius burchardi</i> <sup>a</sup>	20/30/40 <sup>n=1</sup>	58/43/37	ND	ND	46/26/26	30/15/15
<i>Heloecius cordiformis</i> <sup>a</sup>	10 <sup>b</sup>	ND	ND	ND	ND	70
<i>Melita plumulosa</i> <sup>b</sup>	10 <sup>n=3</sup>	76±15	ND	ND	64	36±9
PARTICULATE COPPER EFFECTS ENDPOINT, mg Cu/kg <sup>a</sup>						
Organism	Days	LC50 <sup>a</sup>	LC20	LC10	LOEC	NOEC
<i>Corophium minor</i> <sup>a</sup>	10 <sup>n=2</sup>	1980±160	1560±10	<b>1260±50</b>	1750±250	1250±250
<i>Hyale longicornis</i> <sup>a</sup>	10 <sup>n=2</sup>	1030±20	<b>610±35</b>	ND	1000	500
<i>Nassarius burchardi</i> <sup>a</sup>	10 <sup>n=2</sup>	1720±14	1550±200	<b>1450±20</b>	1750±250	1250±250
<i>Heloecius cordiformis</i> <sup>a</sup>	10 <sup>b</sup>	ND	ND	ND	ND	2000
<i>Melita plumulosa</i> <sup>b</sup>	10 <sup>n=8</sup>	940±30	790±30	720±30	870±30 <sup>n=2</sup>	<b>720±120 <sup>n=2</sup></b>
<i>Tellina deltoidalis</i> <sup>b</sup>	10 <sup>n=2</sup>	1030±150	850±130	790±120	950±50	<b>660±60</b>
<i>Spicula trigonella</i> <sup>b</sup>	10 <sup>n=8</sup>	940±40	790±35	710±30	950±50	<b>950±50</b>
<i>Nitocra spinipes</i> <sup>c</sup>	5 <sup>n=1</sup>	2000	ND	ND	1000	<b>800</b>
<i>Soletellina alba</i> <sup>d</sup>	10 <sup>n=1</sup>	ND	ND	ND	<b>1300</b>	ND
<i>Mysella anomala</i> <sup>d</sup>	10 <sup>n=1</sup>	ND	ND	ND	ND	<b>1200</b>
<i>Nephtys australiensis</i> <sup>d</sup>	10 <sup>n=1</sup>	ND	ND	ND	ND	<b>1400</b>
<i>Australoneries ehlersi</i> <sup>d</sup>	10 <sup>n=1</sup>	ND	ND	ND	ND	<b>1300</b>

<sup>a</sup> Simpson et al (2011) mean±standard deviation for *n* tests. <sup>b</sup> From Strom et al. (2011). <sup>c</sup> From Perez-Landa and Simpson (2011). <sup>d</sup> From King et al. (2004). ND = not determined due to inadequate concentration-response relationships. The **bold values** are the values used in the SSD. LCx and ECx are concentrations that cause x% lethality (L) or effect (E), respectively; CL confidence limit.

The acute copper effects data for these twelve benthic invertebrates were incorporated into an SSD to derive an SQG that is applicable to specific properties of this sediment (Table A7.1). The data comprised NOEC and LOEC values derived from statistical comparisons with control responses, and LC10 values calculated from the dose–response model. The mean LC10/NOEC ratio was  $1.0 \pm 0.2$  (±standard deviation, *n* = 5), indicating that for many data sets these values may be interchangeable (Simpson et al., 2011). These calculations resulted in 95%PC values of 530 mg/kg for LC10s and 510 mg/kg for NOECs. On this basis, an acute no effects threshold of 510 mg/kg appears suitable for the silty sediment. Applying an ACR of 3.2 was therefore considered as appropriate (see Simpson et al., 2011), and resulted in a chronic no effects threshold of 160 mg/kg for the silty sediment.

With ~98% <63 µm particles, these sediments were possibly more silty than the ‘average’ silty sediments underpinning the effects-based guideline trigger value of 65 mg Cu/kg and the ISQG-high of 270 mg/kg (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000). Given that empirical effects guidelines are largely based only on acute toxicity data (albeit for co-occurring contaminants) (Long et al., 1995), then for our sediment, the value 190 mg/kg could be considered a site-specific trigger value. However, this would not be considered a reliable replacement copper SQGV for a number of reasons:

- (i) the acute effects for many of the species used were due, predominantly, to dissolved copper in the overlying waters that partitioned from the copper-spiked sediments. In naturally contaminated

sediments at field locations, the dissolved exposure would be significantly lower due to greater dilution by overlying waters.

- (ii) the SSD calculation only applies to one specific sediment for which these tests were undertaken, and different effects thresholds would be expected for different sediment properties.

### A7.3.3 NORMALISED (<63 µm/OC) COPPER EFFECTS THRESHOLDS

A large amount of 10-day lethal effects data were gathered for three benthic invertebrates, *M. plumulosa*, *T. deltoidalis* and *S. trigonella*, for exposures to oxic/sub-oxic sediment with differing properties, both naturally varying and through modifications by amendment of silt and TOC, pH, etc. For each of these tests, detailed measurements were made of sediment properties (AVS, TOC, particle size, pH/Eh, other metals) and of the partitioning of copper between different sediment compartments (solid phases and dissolved copper in the pore water and overlying water) during tests. When all of these data are analysed collectively, the normalisation of acute effects to the epibenthic amphipod, *M. plumulosa*, and the bivalve, *S. trigonella*, using the <63 µm copper concentration/TOC concentration, provided a suitable approach for predicting effects in sediments with varying properties (Figure A7.4). Without this normalisation, there is no possibility of predicting when toxicity may occur (Figures A7.4a, c).

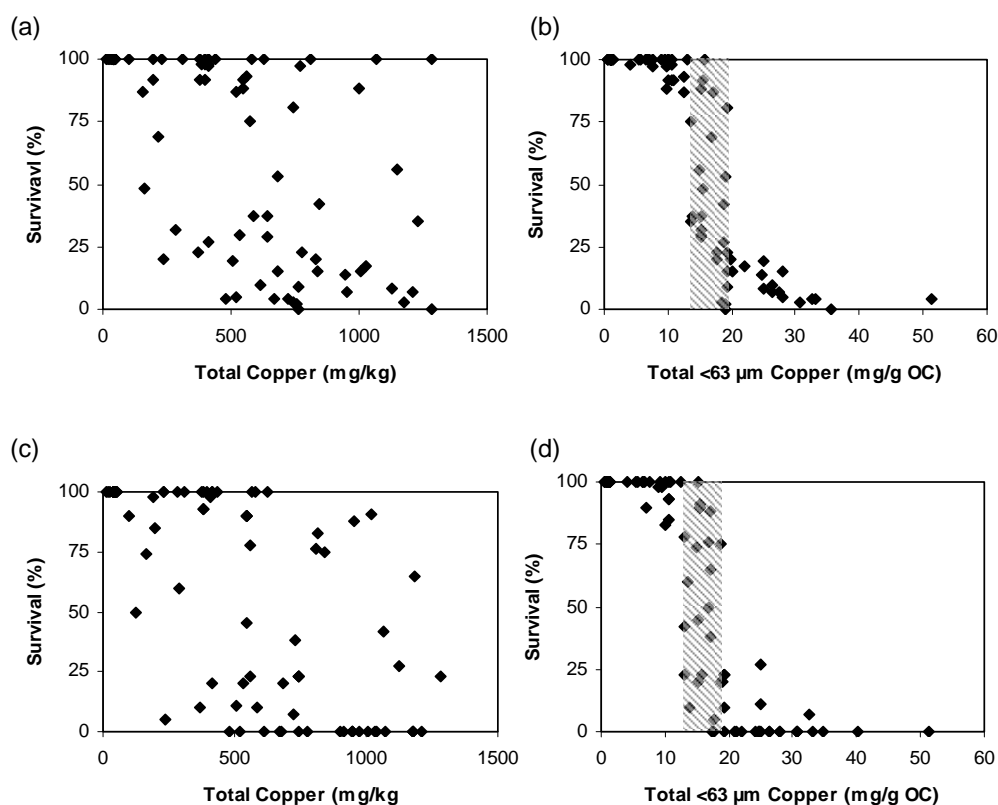


Figure A7.4. The normalisation of total copper to silt (<63 µm sediment fractions) and TOC provided a suitable approach for predicting effects in sediments with varying properties for *M. plumulosa* (a, b) and *S. trigonella* (c, d). Each data point represents the mean of three replicates (Strom, presentation at SETAC World Congress, 2008).

It is important to recognise here that the 10-day lethal effects for *S. trigonella* were due to dissolved copper exposure, while the 10-day lethal effects for *M. plumulosa* were due to both particulate (dietary) and dissolved copper exposure.

No observable effect concentrations (NOECs) were determined based on 10-day exposures to copper normalised to the <63 µm sediment fraction and organic carbon, respectively. Using these data, an SSD was created using the BurrliOZ algorithms (ANZECC/ARMCANZ, 2000) (Figure A7.5) and PC95 values (equivalent to 5HC5s) of 11 mg <63 µm Cu/g OC determined.

The PC95 value is considered to be quite conservative (protective) as:

- (i) the particulate copper was present in a highly bioavailable form (i.e. copper-spiked sub-oxic sediments) and is expected to conservatively account for any long-term transformations of mineralised and sulfidic phases into more bioavailable forms;
- (ii) the laboratory-based exposures were expected to create much higher dissolved copper exposure from the overlying water than would be expected for the same sediments in the field, i.e. where the copper released to the overlying water is diluted;
- (iii) the normalised particulate copper concentration is expected to account for dissolved and particulate copper exposure pathways for a diverse range of organisms; and
- (iv) SSD-based guidelines are considered to be quite conservative.

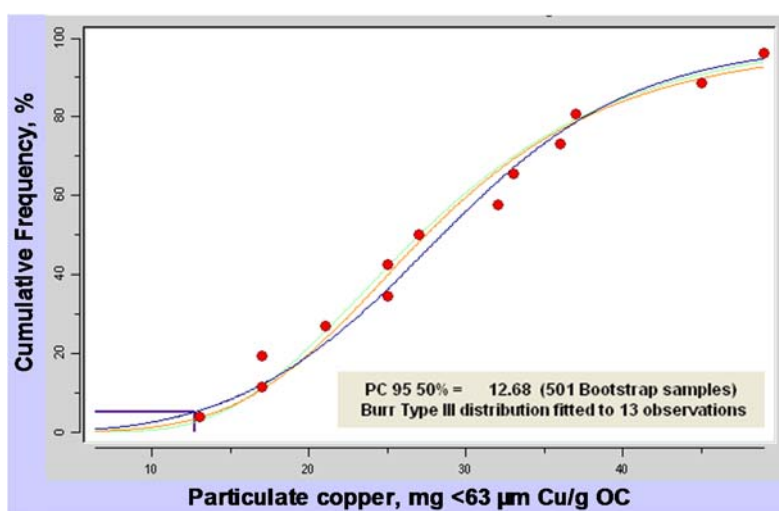


Figure A7.5. The SSD for normalised particulate copper (mg <63 µm Cu/g OC) for a range of benthic organisms in silty sediments (Simpson et al., 2008)

The use of the copper concentrations of the <63 µm sediment fraction (<63 µm Cu) normalised to the particulate organic carbon concentration of the <63 µm sediment fraction (<63 µm POC), provided the best interpretation of effects thresholds for copper in oxic/sub-oxic sediments with a wide range of particle sizes and organic carbon concentrations. Furthermore, the effects thresholds derived for oxic/sub-oxic sediments would be protective against effects from copper in sediment contain significant amounts of AVS and also for sediments containing significant amounts of highly mineralised forms of copper. AVS phases are susceptible to oxidation and there is a potential for some copper from highly mineralised forms to redistribute to more bioavailable forms.

It is suggested that the 'normalised' SSD-based acute effects threshold of 11 mg Cu/g OC (<63 µm /<63 µm OC) is used as a SQGV for copper. The significance of this normalised SQGV is demonstrated when 'conditional SQGVs' are recalculated in terms of total particulate copper in Table A7.2. For the purpose of this calculation, all the copper and OC in the sediment is assumed to be present in the <63 µm sediment fraction.

The calculation demonstrates that for sediments with greater concentrations of silt (<63 µm particles), and/or greater concentrations of fine-grained particulate organic carbon (<63 µm OC), then the copper

effects threshold, below which effects will be negligible, increases, i.e. the SQGV based on total copper should increase.

**Table A7.2. Calculation of conditional SQGVs for copper based on the 'normalised' SSD-based effects threshold of 11 mg Cu/g OC (<63 µm sediment/<63 µm OC)**

% SILT		ACUTE SQGV FOR COPPER, mg Cu/kg <sup>a</sup>							
100	41	52	85	113	140	250	530	910	1130
90	41	51	83	109	135	240	500	870	1090
75	40	50	79	104	128	225	470	820	1010
50	38	47	72	93	114	200	410	700	870
25	37	43	63	80	96	160	330	560	690
10	35	40	55	67	80	130	250	430	530
2	33	37	47	56	64	100	190	310	370
% OC	0.10	0.20	0.50	0.75	1.0	2.0	5.0	8.0	10

<sup>a</sup> Total copper concentrations based on acute SQG of 11 mg Cu/g OC normalised to % silt and OC, and a no effect threshold of 30 mg/kg (background, non-bioavailable copper)

The conditional SQGVs consider all of the bioavailable copper to be associated with the <63 µm sediment fraction (Table A7.2). In situations where there are high copper concentrations associated with larger particle size fractions (not bioaccessible) or copper in highly mineralised forms (not bioavailable), this copper will not be expected to contribute significantly to dietary exposure and guidelines for pore waters and overlying waters should apply.

To account for this non-bioaccessible or non-bioavailable copper, the use of the conditional SQGVs based on total copper concentrations requires that an adjustment is made for this 'copper'. A suggested correction for the background copper that does not contribute significantly to the bioavailable copper exposure to benthic organisms, is to add the background copper concentration to the conditional SQGVs as shown in Table A7.2.

## A7.4 Guideline Value Based on Chronic Toxicity of Copper to Benthic Organisms

Matching acute and chronic effects data for silty sediments with identical properties were produced for the amphipod, *Melita plumulosa*, the bivalve, *Tellina deltoidalis*, the copepod, *Nitocra spinipes*, the benthic alga, *Entomoneis cf punctulata*, and the snail, *Nassarius burchardi* (sub-chronic effects) (references by Strom, Perez-Landa, Spadaro and Simpson).

For the amphipod, *Melita plumulosa* (ACR= ~ 2), chronic effects (reproduction) were observed at normalised particulate copper concentrations of 7±1 mg Cu/g OC. For the same sediments the threshold for acute effects was 16±3 mg Cu/g OC. For *M. plumulosa* the ACR was 2.3 (Strom, 2010), and LC50s for 10-day survival = 770-850 mg/kg, 7-week gravidity = 410 mg/kg, and 7-week fertility = 320 mg/kg in copper-spiked (silty) sediments (Gale et al., 2006). Mann et al. (2009) found ACRs = 1.8-2.6 and LC50 values for 10-day survival ~ 500 mg/kg and 13-day rapid-fecundity ~250 mg/kg in copper-spiked (sandy) sediments. For the bivalve, *Tellina deltoidalis* (ACR = 2.5), chronic effects (growth) were observed at normalised particulate copper concentrations of 4 and 6 mg Cu/g OC for the silty-sand and sandy copper-spiked sediments, respectively. The chronic effects threshold of 5±1 mg Cu/g OC was lower than the acute effects (lethality to similar sized bivalves) threshold of 12±2 mg Cu/g OC (Strom, 2010).

For the benthic algae, *Entomoneis cf punctulata* (ACR = ~2), effects to the algae occurred due to dissolved copper exposure only, but assessed for copper-spiked sediments (Strom, 2010). For the copepod, *Nitocra spinipes* (ACR = ~2): LC50s for 4-day survival ~600 mg/kg and 7-day juvenile-development ~300 mg/kg in copper-spiked (silty) sediments (Perez-Landa and Simpson, 2010). For the snail, *Nassarius burchardi* (ACR = ~1.7), LC10 values for 10-day acute lethality and 40-day sub-chronic lethality in copper-spiked silty sediments were 1470 (1340-1620) and 870 (620-1240) mg/kg, respectively (Simpson et al., 2011).

The outcome from the matching acute and chronic effects assessments was that an ACR of 3.2 appears suitable.

Using the acute effects data and the ACRs for the species *Melita plumulosa*, *Tellina deltoidalis*, *Entomoneis cf punctulata*, *Nitocra spinipes* and *Nassarius burchardi*, an SSD was created (Figure A7.6a). This calculation determined a 95% protection concentration of 4.8 mg <63 µm Cu/g OC. Using the all of the acute NOEC data and applying an average ACR of 2.5 to all species (*Entomoneis cf punctulata* not included) the 95% protection concentration was 5.1 mg <63 µm Cu/g OC (Figure A7.6b). Based on the most recent studies, this 95% protection concentration has been revised to 3.5 mg <63 µm Cu/g OC (Simpson et al., 2011; Campana et al., 2012). Chronic conditional SQGVs for total copper in sediments with a background concentration of non-bioavailable copper of 10 mg Cu/kg are shown in Table A7.3.

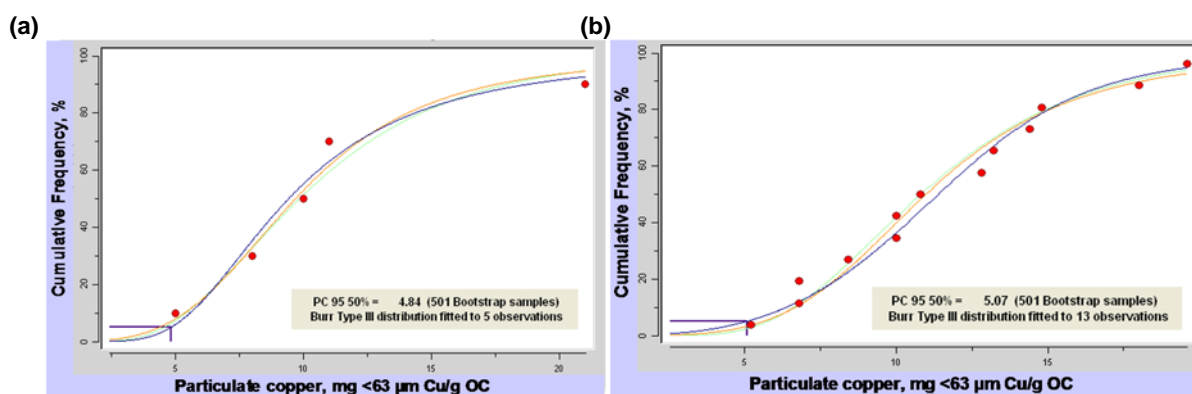


Figure A7.6. SSDs for normalised particulate copper (mg <63 µm Cu/g OC) using (a) chronic NOECs and (b) acute NOECs divided by ACR of 2.5

Table A7.3. Chronic conditional SQGVs for total copper in sediments

% SILT		CHRONIC SQGVs FOR COPPER, mg Cu/g <sup>a</sup>								
100	14	17	28	36	45	80	170	290	360	
90	13	17	27	35	44	77	160	280	350	
75	13	16	26	33	41	72	150	260	320	
50	13	15	23	30	37	64	130	225	280	
25	12	14	21	26	31	52	105	180	220	
10	12	13	18	22	26	42	81	140	170	
2	11	12	16	18	21	32	59	100	120	
% OC		0.10	0.20	0.50	0.75	1.0	2.0	5.0	8.0	10

<sup>a</sup> Total copper concentrations based on chronic SQGV of 3.5 mg Cu/g OC normalised to % silt and OC, and a no effect threshold of 10 mg/kg (background, non-bioavailable copper)

## A7.5 Validation of the Guideline Approach for Predicting Chronic Toxicity of Copper to Benthic Organisms

Further research has recently been completed on the influence of sediment properties on sub-lethal effects of copper on the reproduction of *M. plumulosa* and *N. spinipes* (Campana et al., 2012) and growth rate of *T. deltoidalis* (Campana et al., 2013). For both of these studies, the OC-normalized copper concentration in the <63 µm sediment fraction provided a single effects threshold for all sediment types. For reproduction of *M. plumulosa* and *N. spinipes*, the 10% effect concentrations (EC10s) were 5.2 and 4.8 mg <63 µm Cu/g OC (Figure 7.7). For the growth of *T. deltoidalis*, a no-effect value of 5.5 mg <63 µm Cu/g OC for was calculated (Figure 7.7). These results confirm the appropriateness of using OC-normalised copper concentration in the <63 µm sediment fraction to develop SQGVs that vary with sediment properties.

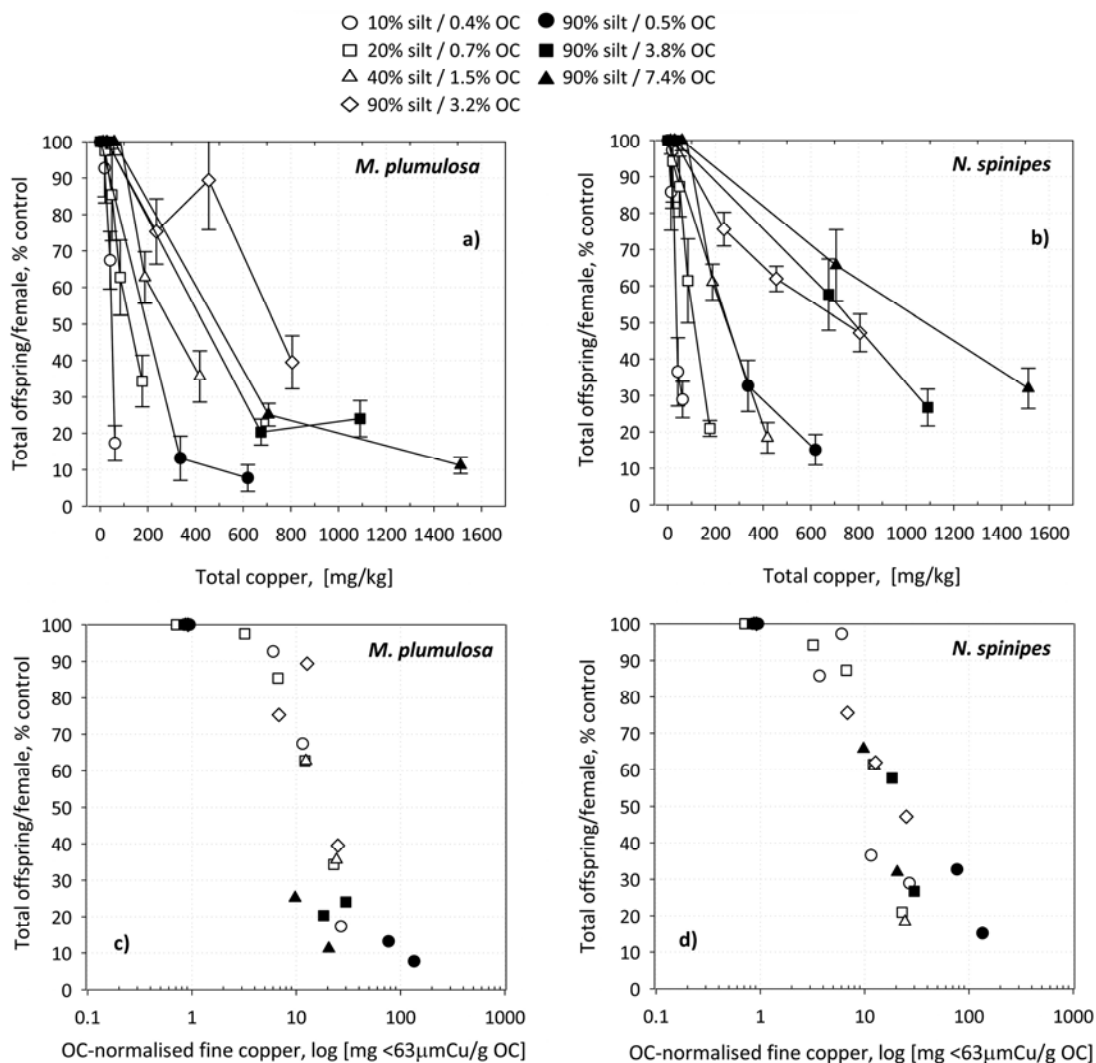
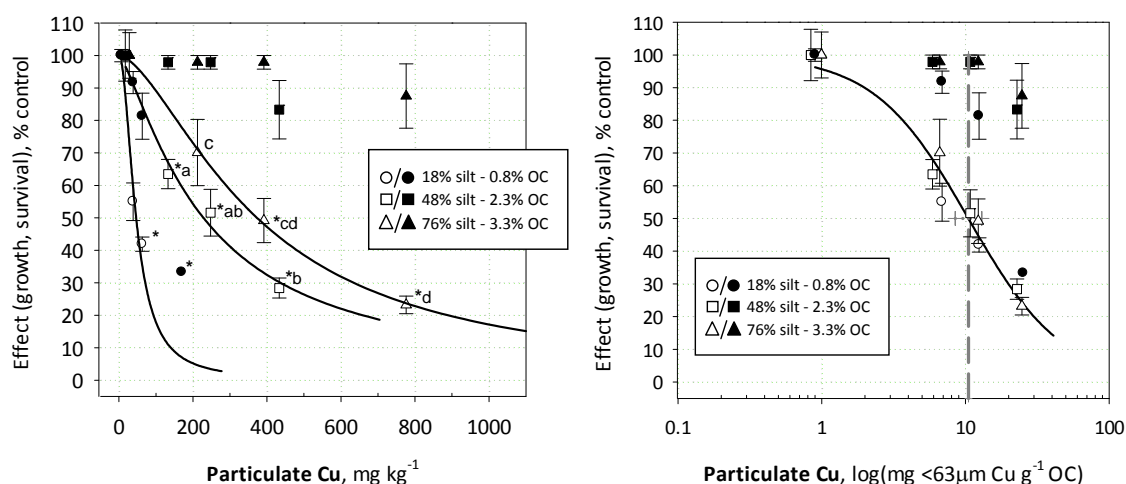


Figure A7.7. Effect (total-offspring/female) normalized to the average offspring in the corresponding control versus sediment copper concentration for exposure of *M. plumulosa* and *N. spinipes*, based on: (a, b) total copper, and (c, d) copper in <63 µm sediment/g OC (from Campana et al., 2012)





**Figure A7.8.** Dose-response relationships of lethal (survival - filled symbols) and sub-lethal (growth – open symbols) effects (means  $\pm$  SE) to (a) particulate copper concentrations and (b)  $<63\ \mu\text{m}$  sediment per g of organic carbon (OC). Lines represent logistic sigmoidal models applied to the growth response. \* indicates significant difference from the control; means that share the same letter are not significantly different. The dashed line in (b) represents the EC50 of  $10.5\ \text{mg } <63\ \mu\text{m Cu/g OC}$  (from Campana et al., 2013).

## A7.6 Summary

The potential for modifying SQGVs for metals based on SSDs of effects data that vary in a predictable manner with changes in sediment particle-size and organic carbon appears to offer a significant improvement on the existing 'single value' SQGVs.

The use of metal-spiked sediments to create suitable data sets requires that the partitioning of metals between the dissolved and particulate phase is measured and deemed to be environmentally realistic before data can be used. Even with adequate equilibration, newly added metals are expected to result in greater exposure of organisms to bioavailable metals than would be expected for field-contaminated sediments with similar total metal concentrations. The metals in these sediments are expected to be highly bioavailable through both diet and partitioning to sediment pore waters and the overlying waters of the test containers.

The use of laboratory-based bioassays that do not have continuous renewal of overlying water results in greater exposure of organisms to dissolved metals than would be expected to occur for the same sediments at field locations where dilution with overlying water occurs rapidly. It is therefore important to carefully consider whether the dissolved metal exposure needs to be manipulated lower, through water renewal for example.

For sediments with significant AVS concentrations, there will be higher effects thresholds for metals such as Ag, Cd, Cu, Ni, Pb and Zn, however, AVS may not offer adequate protection for epibenthic organisms as the AVS in the surface sediments will be oxidised.

The provision of SQGs that better predict the effects of metals in sediments of varying properties and thus provide adequate protection against toxicity now appears quite achievable, as demonstrated by the present study of copper-contaminated sediments. SQGVs for copper derived from SSDs of effects data varied in a predictable manner with changes in sediment particle size and organic carbon, and were shown to offer a significant improvement on the existing 'single value' SQG. Adequate protection for all benthic organisms is expected to be achieved for an OC-normalised copper concentration of the  $<63\ \mu\text{m}$  sediment fraction particulate copper concentration of  $3.5\ \text{mg Cu/g OC}$  and when dissolved copper in sediment pore waters or overlying waters is below  $3\ \mu\text{g Cu/L}$ . For short-term exposures, the equivalent acute guidelines



are 11 mg <63 µm Cu/g OC and 9 µg Cu/L, respectively. SQGVs that vary with sediment properties can also be prepared in tabular form that both allows easy reference and can incorporate considerations of uncertainty.

The approach used for SQGV derivation incorporates a high degree of conservatism. Even with adequate equilibration, metal-spiked sediments are expected to result in greater metal exposure of organisms to bioavailable metals than would be expected for field-contaminated sediments with similar total metal concentrations. As the majority of the spiked copper was present in dilute acid-extractable metal (AEM) forms, it was seen as appropriate to apply the guidelines in Tables 7.2 and 7.3 to the AEM copper concentration. Furthermore, the use of laboratory-based bioassays that do not have continuous renewal of overlying water results in greater exposure of organisms to dissolved metals than would be expected to occur for the same sediments at field locations where dilution with overlying water occurs rapidly. Copper bioavailability will be further reduced in sediments with significant AVS concentrations, however, as AVS may be oxidised in surface sediments, it was not included as a persistent bioavailability modifying factor.

The use of metal-spiked sediments to create SSD-based guidelines for particulate metals is considered to be quite conservative (protective) as:

- (i) the particulate metal exposure created using metal-spiked sediments will be present in a quite bioavailable form and is expected to conservatively account for any long term transformations of mineralised and sulfidic phases into more bioavailable forms;
- (ii) the laboratory-based exposures are expected to create much higher dissolved metal exposure from the overlying water than would be expected for the same sediments in the field, i.e. where the metal released to the overlying is diluted;
- (iii) the normalised particulate metal concentration may account for dissolved and particulate metal exposure pathways for a diverse range of organisms; and
- (iv) SSD-based guidelines are considered to be quite conservative.

## A8. References

- Allen, H.E., Fu, G. and Deng, B. (1993). Analysis of acid-volatile sulfide (AVS) and simultaneous extracted metals (SEM) for the estimation of potential toxicity in aquatic sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 12, 1441-1453
- Anderson, M.J., Hewitt, J.E., Ford, R.B. and Thrush, S.F. (2006). Regional models of benthic ecosystem health: predicting pollution gradients from biological data. Auckland Regional Council Report TP317, Auckland, 103 pp.
- Angel, B.M., Simpson, S.L. and Jolley, D.F. (2010). Toxicity to *Melita plumulosa* from intermittent and continuous exposures to dissolved copper. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 29, 2823-2830.
- ANZECC/ARMCANZ (2000). Australian and New Zealand guidelines for fresh and marine water quality. Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council/ Agriculture and Resource Management Council of Australia and New Zealand.
- Bat, L. and Raffaelli, D. (1998). Sediment toxicity testing: a bioassay approach using the amphipod *Corophium volutator* and the polychaete *Arenicola marina*. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.*, 226, 217–239.
- Berg, M., Arnold, C.G., Müller, S.R., Mühlemann, J. and Schwarzenbach, R.P. (2001). Sorption and desorption behavior of organotin compounds in sediment–pore water systems. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 35, 3151-3157.
- Berry, W.J., Hansen, D.J., Mahony, J.D., Robson, D.L., Di Toro, D.M., Shipley, B.P., Rogers, B., Corbin, J.M. and Boothman, W.S. (1996). Predicting the toxicity of metal-spiked laboratory sediments using acid-volatile sulfide and interstitial water normalizations. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 15, 2067-2079
- Brils, J.M., Huwer, S.L., Kater, B.J., Schout, P.G., Harmsen, J., Delvigne, G.A.L. and Scholten, M.C.Th. (2002). Oil effect in freshly spiked marine sediment on *Vibrio fischeri*, *Corophium volutator*, and *Echinocardium cordatum*. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 21, 2242–2251.
- Burton, G.A., Pitt, R. and Clark, S. (2000). The role of traditional and novel toxicity test methods in assessing stormwater and sediment contamination. *Crit. Rev. Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 30, 413-447.
- Burton, E.D., Phillips, I.R. and Hawker, D.W. (2005). In-situ partitioning of butyltin compounds in estuarine sediments. *Chemosphere*, 59, 585-592.
- Campana, O., Blasco, J. and Simpson, S.L. (2013). Demonstrating the appropriateness of developing sediment quality guidelines based on sediment geochemical properties. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 47, 7483-7489.
- Campana, O., Spadaro, D.A., Blasco, J. and Simpson, S.L. (2012). Sublethal effects of copper to benthic invertebrates explained by changes in sediment properties and dietary exposure. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 46, 6835-6842.
- Campbell, E., Palmer, M., Shao, Q. and Wilson, D. (2000). BurrliOz Version 1.0.13; CSIRO Mathematics and Information Sciences Canberra, Australia
- Camusso, M., Polesello, S., Valsecchi, S. and Vignati, D.A.L. (2012). Importance of dietary uptake of trace elements in the benthic deposit-feeding *Lumbriculus variegatus*. *Trends Anal. Chem.*, 36 103-112.
- CCME (2002). Canadian Sediment Quality Guidelines for the Protection of Aquatic Life – Summary Tables Update 2002 ([www.ccme.publications/ceqg\\_rcqe.html](http://www.ccme.publications/ceqg_rcqe.html))
- Chapman, P.M., Allard, P.J. and Vigers, G.A. (1999). Development of sediment quality values for Hong Kong Special Administrative Region: A possible model for other jurisdictions. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 38, 161-169.

- Chariton, A.A., Roach, A.C., Simpson, S.L. and Batley, G.E. (2010). The influence of the choice of physical and chemistry variables on interpreting the spatial patterns of sediment contaminants and their relationships with benthic communities. *Mar. Freshwater Res.* 61, 1109-1122.
- Costa, F.O., Correia, A.D. and Costa, M.H. (1996). Sensitivity of a marine amphipod to non-contaminant variables and to copper in the sediment. *Écologie*, 27, 249–276.
- De Jonge, M., Blust, R. and Bervoets, L. (2010). The relation between acid volatile sulphides (AVSs) and metal accumulation in aquatic invertebrates: implications of feeding behavior and ecology. *Environ. Pollut.*, 158, 1381–1391.
- Di Toro, D.M. and McGrath, J.A. (2000). Technical basis for narcotic chemicals and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon criteria. II. Mixtures and sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 19, 1971-1982.
- Di Toro, D.M., Mahony, J.D., Hansen, D.J., Scott, K.J., Carlson, A.R. and Ankley, G.T. (1992). Acid volatile sulfide predicts the acute toxicity of cadmium and nickel in sediments. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 26, 96-101.
- Di Toro, D.M., McGrath, J.A. and Hansen, D.J. (2000). Technical basis for narcotic chemicals and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon criteria. I. Water and tissue. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 19:1971-1982.
- Driscoll, S.B.K. and Burgess, R.M. (2007). An overview of the development, status, and application of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks for PAH mixtures. *Human Ecol. Risk Assess.*, 13, 286-301.
- Eriksson Wiklund, A.-K. and Sundelin, B. (2002). Bioavailability of metals to the amphipod *Monoporeia affinis*: interactions with authigenic sulfides in urban brackish-water and freshwater sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 21, 1219–1228.
- Gale, S.A., King, C.K. and Hyne, R.V. (2006). Chronic sublethal sediment toxicity testing using the estuarine amphipod, *Melita plumulosa* (Zeidler): Evaluation using metal-spiked and field-contaminated sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 25, 1887-1898.
- Gallon, C., Hare, L. and Tessier, A. (2008). Surviving in anoxic surroundings: how burrowing aquatic insects create an oxic microhabitat. *J. North Am. Benthol. Soc.*, 27, 570–580.
- Hagopian-Schlekat, T., Chandler, G.T. and Shaw, T.J. (2001). Acute toxicity of five sediment-associated metals, individually and in mixture, to the estuarine meiobenthic harpacticoid copepod *Amphiascus tenuiremis*. *Mar. Environ. Res.*, 51, 247–264.
- Hammerschmidt, C.R. and Burton, G.A. (2010). Measurements of acid volatile sulfide and simultaneously extracted metals are irreproducible among laboratories. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 29, 1453-1456.
- Hawthorne S.B., Miller, D.J. and Kreitinger, J.P. (2006). Measurement of total polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon concentrations in sediments and toxic units used for estimating risk to benthic invertebrates at manufactured gas plant sites. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 25, 287–296.
- Hoch, M., Alonso-Azcarate, J. and Lischick, M. (2002). Adsorption behavior of toxic tributyltin to clay-rich sediments under various environmental conditions. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 21:1390-1397.
- Jonker, M.T.O., Brils, J.M., Sinke, A.J.C., Murk, A.J., Koelmans, A.A. (2006). Weathering and toxicity of marine sediments contaminated with oils and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 25, 1345-1353.
- King, C.K., Dowse, M.C., Simpson S.L. and Jolley, D. (2004). An assessment of five Australian polychaetes and bivalves for use in whole sediment toxicity tests: toxicity and accumulation of copper and zinc from water and sediment. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 47, 314-323.
- King, C.K., Simpson, S.L., Smith, S.V., Stauber, J.L. and Batley, G.E. (2005). Short term accumulation of Cd and Cu from water, sediment and algae by the amphipod *Melita plumulosa* and the bivalve *Tellina deltoidalis*. *Mar. Ecol. Progr. Ser.*, 287, 177-188.

- Langston, W.J. and Pope, N.D. (1995). Determinants of TBT adsorption and desorption in estuarine sediments. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 31, 32-43.
- Long, E.R., Ingersoll, C.G. and MacDonald, D.D. (2006). Calculation and uses of mean sediment quality guideline quotients: a critical review. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 40, 1726-1736.
- Long, E.R., MacDonald, D.D., Smith, S.L. and Calder, F.D. (1995). Incidence of adverse effects within ranges of chemical concentrations in marine and estuarine sediments. *Environ. Manag.*, 19, 81-97.
- Luoma, S.N. and Rainbow, P. (2008). *Metal Accumulation in Aquatic Environments*, Cambridge University Press: Cambridge, U.K.
- Lopes, I., Baird, D.J. and Ribeiro, R. (2004). Avoidance of copper contamination by field populations of *Daphnia longispina*. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 23, 1702-1708.
- MacDonald, D.D., Carr, R.S., Calder, F.D., Long, E.R. and Ingersoll, C.G. (1996). Development and evaluation of sediment quality guidelines for Florida coastal waters. *Ecotoxicol.*, 5, 253-278.
- MacDonald, D.D., Ingersoll, C.G. and Berger, T.A. (2000). Development and evaluation of consensus-based sediment quality guidelines for freshwater ecosystems. *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 39, 20-31.
- Mann, R.M., Hyne, R.V., Spadaro, D.A. and Simpson, S.L. (2009). Development and application of a rapid amphipod reproduction test for sediment quality assessment. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 28, 1244-1254.
- Marsden, I.D. (2002). Life-history traits of a tube-dwelling corophioid amphipod, *Paracorophium excavatum*, exposed to sediment copper. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol.*, 270, 57-72.
- Marsden, I.D. and Wong, C.H.T. (2001). Effects of sediment copper on a tube-dwelling estuarine amphipod, *Paracorophium excavatum*. *Mar. Freshwater Res.*, 52, 1007-1014.
- Maruya, K.A., Landrum, P.F., Burgess, R.M. and Shine, J.P. (2010). Incorporating contaminant bioavailability into sediment quality assessment frameworks. *Integ. Environ. Assess. Manage.*, 8, 659-673.
- Maruya, K.A., Zeng, E.Y., Tsukada, D. and Bay, S.M. (2009). A passive sampler based on solid-phase microextraction for quantifying hydrophobic organic contaminants in sediment pore water. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 28, 733-740.
- Meador, J.P. (2000a). An analysis in support of a sediment quality threshold for tributyltin to protect prey species for juvenile salmonids listed by the Endangered Species Act. Environmental Conservation Division, Northwest Fisheries Science Center, NOAA Seattle, WA.
- Meador, J.P. (2000b). Predicting the fate and effects of tributyltin in marine systems. *Rev. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 166, 1-48.
- Meador, J.P., Krone, C.A., Dyer, D.W. and Varanasi, U. (1997). Toxicity of sediment-associated tributyltin to infaunal invertebrates: species comparison and the role of organic carbon. *Mar. Environ. Res.*, 43, 219-241.
- Naylor, C.; Davison, W., Motelica-Heino, M., Van Den Berg, G.A. and Van Der Heijdt, L.M. (2004). Simultaneous release of sulfide with Fe, Mn, Ni and Zn in marine harbour sediment measured using a combined metal/sulfide DGT probe. *Sci. Tot. Environ.*, 328, 275-286.
- Perez-Landa, V. and Simpson, S.L. (2010). A rapid life-cycle test with the epibenthic copepod *Nitocra spinipes* for sediment toxicity assessment. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.* (submitted).
- Pettigrove, V. and Hoffmann, A. (2005). A field-based microcosm method to assess the effects of polluted urban stream sediments on aquatic macroinvertebrates. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 24, 170-180.
- Rainbow, P.S. (2007). Trace metal bioaccumulation: Models, metabolic availability and toxicity. *Environ. Int.*, 33, 576-582.

- Roper, D.S., Nipper, M.G., Hickey, C.W., Martin, M.L. and Weatherhead, M.A. (1995). Burial, crawling and drifting behaviour of the bivalve *Macoma liliana* in relation to common sediment contaminants. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.*, 31, 471-478.
- Simpson, S.L. (2005) An exposure-effect model for calculating copper effect concentrations in sediments with varying copper binding properties: a synthesis. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 39, 7089-7096.
- Simpson, S.L. and Batley, G.E. (2003). Disturbances to metal partitioning during toxicity testing of iron(II)-rich porewaters and whole sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 22, 424-432.
- Simpson, S.L. and Batley, G.E. (2007). Predicting metal toxicity in sediments: A critique of current approaches. *Integ. Environ. Assess. Manag.*, 3, 18-31.
- Simpson, S.L. and King, C.K. (2005). Exposure-pathway models explain causality in whole-sediment toxicity tests. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 39, 837-843.
- Simpson, S.L. and Spadaro, D.A. (2011) Performance and sensitivity of rapid sublethal sediment toxicity tests with the amphipod *Melita plumulosa* and copepod *Nitocra spinipes* *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 30, 2326–2334.
- Simpson, S.L., Apte, S.C. and Batley, G.E. (1998). Effect of short term resuspension events of trace metals speciation in polluted anoxic sediments. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 32, 620-625.
- Simpson, S.L., Apte, S.C. and Batley, G.E. (2000). Effect of short-term resuspension events on the oxidation of cadmium, lead and zinc sulfide phases in anoxic sediments. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 34, 4533-4537.
- Simpson, S.L., Batley, G.E., Hamilton, I. and Spadaro, D.A. (2011). Guidelines for copper in sediments with varying properties. *Chemosphere*, 85, 1487-1495.
- Simpson, S.L., Micevska, T., Adams, M.S., Stone, A. and Maher, W. (2007). Establishing cause-effect relationships in PAH and hydrocarbon contaminated sediments using the benthic marine alga, *Entomoneis cf punctulata*. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 26, 163-170.
- Simpson, S.L., Strom, D. and Batley, G.E. (2008). Development of a sediment quality guideline for copper. CSIRO Land and Water Science Report No. 51/08, 48 pages.
- Simpson, S.L., Yverneau, H., Cremazy, A., Jarolimek, C., Price, H.L. and Jolley, D.F. (2012). DGT-induced copper flux predicts bioaccumulation and toxicity to bivalves in sediments with varying properties. *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 46, 9038–9046.
- Strom D., Simpson, S.L., Batley, G.E. and Jolley, D.F. (2011). Accounting for the influence of sediment particle size and organic carbon on toxicity of copper to benthic invertebrates in oxic/sub-oxic surface sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 30, 1599-1610.
- Strom, D. (2010). Development of a cause-effect based sediment quality guideline for copper. PhD Thesis, University of Wollongong, NSW, Australia.
- Stronkhorst, J., van Hattum, B. and Bowmer, T. (2002). Bioaccumulation and toxicity of tributyltin to a burrowing heart urchin and an amphipod in spiked, silty marine sediments. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 18, 2343–2351.
- Tankere-Muller, S., Zhang, H., Davison, W., Finke, N., Larsen, O., Stahl, H. and Glud, R.N. (2006). Fine scale remobilisation of Fe, Mn, Co, Ni, Cu and Cd in contaminated marine sediment. *Mar. Chem.*, 106, 192–207.
- Teuchies, J., De Jonge, M.M.P., Blust, R. and Bervoets, L. (2012). Can acid volatile sulfides influence metal concentrations in the macrophyte *Myriophyllum aquaticum*? *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 46, 9129-9137.
- USEPA (2003a). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: PAH mixtures. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-013, Washington, DC, USA.

- USEPA (2003b). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Dieldrin. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-010, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2003c). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Endrin. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-009, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2003d). Ambient aquatic life water quality criteria for tributyltin (TBT) – final. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water Report 4304T, EPA 822-R-03-031, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2003e). Draft update of ambient water quality criteria for copper. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Report EPA 822-R-03-026, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2005). Procedures for the derivation of equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Metal mixtures (cadmium, copper, lead, nickel, silver and zinc). U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-011, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2007). Sediment toxicity identification evaluation (TIE) phases I, II, and III guidance Document. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA/600/R-07/080, Washington, DC, USA.
- USEPA (2012). Equilibrium partitioning sediment benchmarks (ESBs) for the protection of benthic organisms: Procedures for the determination of the freely dissolved interstitial water concentrations of nonionic organics. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development Report EPA-600-R-02-012, Washington, DC, USA.
- Verbruggen, E.M.J., Beek, M., Pijnenburg, J. and Traas, T.P. (2008). Ecotoxicological environmental risk limits for total petroleum hydrocarbons on the basis of internal lipid concentrations. *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.* 27, 2436-48.

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS AND ACRONYMS

*ACR*: Acute to chronic ratio.

*Acute toxicity*: Effects resulting from exposure (usually short-term) over a small part of the organism's life span e.g. mortality, enzyme inhibition.

*AEM*: Dilute acid extractable metal (1M HCl).

*Algae*: Comparatively simple chlorophyll-bearing plants, most of which are aquatic, and microscopic in size.

*Amphipod*: A malacostracan crustacean of the order Amphipoda.

*ANOSIM*: Analysis of similarities.

*ANOVA*: Analysis of variance.

*ANZECC*: Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council.

*Aquatic ecosystem*: Any water environment from small to large, from pond to ocean, in which plants and animals interact with the chemical and physical features of the environment.

*ARMCANZ*: Agriculture and Resource Management Council of Australia and New Zealand.

*AVS*: Acid volatile sulfides, the acid soluble sulfide concentration in an aquatic sediment.

*BEDS*: Biological effects database for sediment

*Benthic*: Referring to organisms living in or on the sediments of aquatic habitats.

*Bioaccumulation*: A general term describing a process by which chemical substances are accumulated by aquatic organisms from water directly or through consumption of food containing the chemicals.

*Bioassay*: a test used to evaluate the relative potency of a chemical by measuring its effect on a living organism relative to a control.

*Bioavailable*: Able to be taken up by organisms.

*Biodiversity*: The variety and variability of living organisms and the ecological complexes in which they occur.

*Biomagnification*: The result of the processes of bioaccumulation by which tissue concentrations of bioaccumulated chemicals increase as the chemical passes up through two or more trophic levels. The term implies an efficient transfer of chemicals from food to consumer so that the residue concentrations increase systematically from one trophic level to the next.

*Bivalve*: A mollusc with a shell in two parts, hinged together.

*Chronic toxicity*: Effects over a significant portion of the organism's life span e.g. effects on growth and reproduction.

*COC*: Contaminant of concern.

*Community*: Assemblage of organisms characterised by a distinctive combination of species occupying a common environment and interacting with one another.

*Community composition*: All the types of taxa present in a community.

*Concentration*: The quantifiable amount of a substance in water, food or sediment.

*Contaminants*: Biological or chemical substances or entities, not normally present in a system, capable of producing an adverse effect in a biological system, seriously injuring structure or function.

*Contaminated sediment*: A sediment containing chemical substances at concentrations above background concentrations and above the ANZECC/ ARMCANZ guideline values.

*Control sediment*: A sediment that is sufficiently free of contaminants that it will not cause effects to test organisms. Generally a control sediment will have similar physicochemical parameters as the test sediments.

*Control*: Part of an experimental procedure that is ideally exactly like the treated part except that it is not subject to the test conditions. It is used as a standard of comparison, to check that the outcome of the experiment is a reflection of the test conditions and not of some unknown general factor.

*COPC*: Contaminant of potential concern.

*Copepod*: A small crustaceans found in the sea and nearly every freshwater habitat; many are planktonic (drifting in sea waters), but more are benthic (living on the sediments).

*DDE*: *dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene*.

*DDT*: *dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane*.

*Detection limit*: Method detection limit is the concentration of a substance that, when processed through the complete analytical method, produces a signal that has a 99% probability of being different from the blank.

*DO*: Dissolved oxygen

*DOC*: Dissolved organic carbon

*DTA*: Direct toxicity assessment.

*Ecogenomics*: The examination of genetic (DNA) materials in environmental samples for the purpose of identifying the organisms present.

*Ecotoxicology*: The science dealing with the adverse effects of chemicals, physical agents and natural products on populations and communities of living organisms

*EC50*: The toxicant concentration that is expected to cause one or more specified effects in 50% of a group of organisms under specified conditions.

*ERL*: Effects range low.

*EqP*: *Equilibrium partitioning*

*ERM*: Effects range median.

*ESB*: Equilibrium sediment benchmark.

*FACR*: Final acute to chronic ratio.

*FAV*: Final acute value.

*FCV*: Final chronic value.

*F<sub>OC</sub>*: Fraction of organic carbon

*f-SSD*: Field-based species sensitivity distribution

*f-CSD*: field-based community sensitivity distribution

*Guideline*: Numerical concentration limit or narrative statement to support and maintain a designated water use.

*HC*: Hazardous concentration, usually to a given percentage of species, e.g. HC5 is the concentration hazardous to 5% of species.

*HOC*: Hydrophobic organic contaminant.



*IC50*: A toxicant concentration that would cause a 50% reduction in a non-quantal measurement such as fecundity or growth.

*Index (indices)*: Composite value(s) that can give a quick ranking to a waterbody or other ecosystem feature, derived via a formula that combines measurements of important ecosystem characteristics; typically used to rank 'health' or naturalness.

*Indicator*: Measurement parameter or combination of parameters that can be used to assess the quality of water.

*Invertebrates*: Animals lacking a dorsal column of vertebrae or a notochord.

*K<sub>D</sub>*: Sediment/water partition coefficient.

*K<sub>OC</sub>*: Organic carbon based sediment/water partition coefficient.

*K<sub>OW</sub>*: Octanol–water partition coefficient.

*LC50*: A toxicant concentration that is expected to be lethal to 50% of a group of organisms under specified conditions.

*Level of protection*: The acceptable level of change from a defined reference condition.

*LOE*: Line of evidence.

*LOI*: Loss on ignition.

*LOR*: Limit of reporting.

*Lowest-observable-effect concentration (LOEC)*: The lowest tested concentration of a material (toxicant) at which organisms were adversely affected compared to control organisms.

*Measurement parameter*: Any parameter or variable that is measured to find something out about an ecosystem.

*MDS*: Multidimensional scaling.

*nMDS*: Non-metric multidimensional scaling.

*NOAA*: U.S. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

*No-observable-effect concentration (NOEC)*: The highest tested concentration of a material (toxicant) at which organisms were unaffected, as compared to control organisms.

*NWQMS*: National Water Quality Management Strategy.

*OC*: Organochlorine.

*Organism*: Any living animal or plant; anything capable of carrying on life processes.

*Overlying water*: The water above the sediment at a collection site or in a test chamber.

*Oxidation*: The combination of oxygen with a substance, or the removal of hydrogen from it, or, more generally, any reaction in which an atom loses electrons.

*PAHs*: Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons.

*PCB*: Polychlorinated biphenyl.

*PE*: High probability of effects.

*PED*: Polyethylene device.

*POM*: Polyoxymethylene.

*PEL*: Probable effects level.

*PERMANOVA*: Permutational analysis of variance.

*Pesticide*: Substance or mixture of substances used to kill unwanted species of plants or animals.

*pH*: The intensity of the acidic or basic character of a solution, defined as the negative logarithm of the hydrogen ion concentration of a solution.

*Phytoplankton*: Plants, usually microscopic, floating in aquatic systems.

*Polychaete worm*: Chiefly marine annelids possessing both sexes and having paired appendages (parapodia) bearing bristles.

*Pore water*: The water that occupies the space between and surrounds individual sediment particles in an aquatic sediment (often called *interstitial water*).

*Pyrosequencing*: A method of DNA sequencing (determining the order of nucleotides in DNA) based on real-time (quantitative) detection of pyrophosphate release on nucleotide.

*QA/QC*: Quality assurance/quality control.

*Quality assurance (QA)*: The implementation of checks on the success of quality control (e.g. replicate samples, analysis of samples of known concentration).

*Quality control (QC)*: The implementation of procedures to maximise the integrity of monitoring data (e.g. cleaning procedures, contamination avoidance, sample preservation methods).

*Redox*: Simultaneous (chemical) reduction and oxidation; reduction is the transfer of electrons to an atom or molecule, whereas oxidation is the removal of electrons from an atom or molecule.

*Redox potential*: A measure of the oxidation-reduction potential (ORP) of sediments. The redox potential is often reported as  $E_h$  (versus the normal hydrogen electrode).

*Reference sediment*: A sediment, generally collected near the study site, that is used to assess the affect of sediment and overlying water conditions exclusive of the material(s) (contaminants, toxicants) of interest.

*Reference toxicant*: A test conducted with a reference chemical (toxicant) to assess the sensitivity of the test organisms.

*Reference condition*: An environmental quality or condition that is defined from as many similar systems as possible (including historical data) and used as a benchmark for determining the environmental quality or condition to be achieved and/or maintained in a particular system of equivalent type.

*Risk*: A statistical concept defined as the expected frequency or probability of undesirable effects resulting from a specified exposure to known or potential environmental concentrations of a material, organism or condition. A material is considered safe if the risks associated with its exposure are judged to be acceptable. Estimates of risk may be expressed in absolute or relative terms. Absolute risk is the excess risk due to exposure. Relative risk is the ratio of the risk in the exposed population to the risk in the unexposed population.

*Salinity*: The presence of soluble salts in water or soils.

*Sediment*: Unconsolidated mineral and organic particulate material that has settled to the bottom of aquatic environments.

*SEM*: Simultaneously extracted metals

*Solution concentration*: Concentration of contaminants in the liquid phase.

*Speciation*: Measurement of different chemical forms or species of an element in a solution or solid.

*Species*: Generally regarded as a group of organisms that resemble each other to a greater degree than members of other groups and that form a reproductively isolated group that will not normally breed with members of another group. (Chemical species are differing compounds of an element.)

*Species richness*: The number of species present (generally applied to a sample or community).

*Spiked sediment*: A sediment to which a material has been added for experimental purposes.

*SPMD*: Semi-permeable membrane device.

*SPME*: Solid phase microextraction fibre.

*Statistical power*: The ability of a statistical test to detect an effect given that the effect actually exists.

*SQGV*: Sediment quality guideline value (previously known as a trigger value).

*SQG-High*: The higher sediment quality guideline value (previously the ISQG-High).

*Stressors*: The physical, chemical or biological factors that can cause an adverse effect on an aquatic ecosystem as measured by the condition indicators.

*SSD*: Species sensitivity distribution.

*STU*: Sediment toxic unit.

*Sub-lethal*: Involving a stimulus effect below the level that causes death.

*Taxon (taxa)*: Any group of organisms considered sufficiently distinct from other such groups to be treated as a separate unit (e.g. species, genera, families).

*Taxa richness*: Number of taxa present.

*TBT*: Tributyltin.

*TC*: Total concentration.

*TE*: Threshold for effects.

*TEL*: Threshold effects level.

*TEC*: *Threshold effects concentration*.

*TIE*: Toxicity identification and evaluation.

*TOC*: Total organic carbon.

*Trophic transfer*: *Transfer of accumulated contaminants from one level of the food chain to the next higher level.*

*Toxicant*: A chemical capable of producing an adverse response (effect) in a biological system, seriously injuring structure or function or producing death. Examples include pesticides, heavy metals and biotoxins.

*Toxicity*: The inherent potential or capacity of a material to cause adverse effects in a living organism.

*Toxicity test*: The means by which the toxicity of a chemical or other test material is determined. A toxicity test is used to measure the degree of response produced by exposure to a specific level of stimulus (or concentration of chemical).

*TPH*: Total petroleum hydrocarbon

*TPM*: Total particulate metal (digestion with strong acids)

*Trophic level*: A notional stage in the 'food chain' that transfers matter and energy through a community; primary producers, herbivores, carnivores and decomposers each occupy a different trophic level.

*TV*: Trigger value; the past term used for SQGV.

*Uptake*: A process by which materials are absorbed and incorporated into a living organism.

*Whole sediment*: The sediment and associated pore water that have had minimal disturbance or manipulation.

*WQG*: Water quality guideline.

*WOE*: Weight of evidence.



#### CONTACT US

**t** 1300 363 400  
+61 3 9545 2176  
**e** [enquiries@csiro.au](mailto:enquiries@csiro.au)  
**w** [www.csiro.au](http://www.csiro.au)

#### YOUR CSIRO

Australia is founding its future on science and innovation. Its national science agency, CSIRO, is a powerhouse of ideas, technologies and skills for building prosperity, growth, health and sustainability. It serves governments, industries, business and communities across the nation.

